ŠKODA

Vehicle handover documentation

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

Date of vehicle handover _____ / _____ / _____

Partner ŠKODA
Dealer's stamp and signature

I confirm that the car has been properly handed over to me and that I have been informed of the correct way to use it and of the warranty conditions.
Customer's signature

Does the vehicle have an extended warranty?

☐**YES**

☐**NO**

Limit ŠKODA extended warranty[a)]

Years: _____

or:

km: _____

or

miles: _____

[a)] Whichever comes first.

Reprinting, reproduction or translation, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s., tř. Václava Klementa 869, Mladá Boleslav II, 293 01 Mladá Boleslav, Czech Republic

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2021

Vehicle owner

1. Vehicle owner

Official vehicle registration number:

_____

Vehicle owner (Title, Name / Company):

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Telephone:

_____

ŠKODA Partner:

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

2. Vehicle owner

Official vehicle registration number:

_____

Vehicle owner (Title, Name / Company):

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Telephone:

_____

ŠKODA Partner:

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

Table of Contents

1 Vehicle owner

6 About the Owner's Manual

7 About the Owner's Manual

8 Tutorial videos

9 Explanations

10 Instructions in infotainment
10 Functionality

12 Vehicle overviews
12 Front and lateral areas of the vehicle
14 Rear vehicle area
15 Driver's seat
15 Centre console and passenger seat
16 Engine compartment

17 Warning lights
17 Functionality
17 Warning lights overview

21 Correct and safe
21 Introductory notes for correct use
21 New vehicle or new parts
21 Regular checks
21 Improper vehicle adjustments
22 Keep sensors and cameras functional
22 Engine compartment
22 Handling operating fluids
22 12 volt vehicle battery
23 Electrical sockets in the vehicle
23 Before your journey
23 Sitting safely
23 Correct belt webbing arrangement
24 Correct steering wheel position
24 Securing children properly
24 Transporting objects safely
24 Safe driving
25 Stop the vehicle safely!
25 Exiting the vehicle
26 Different weather conditions
26 Emergency call
27 After an accident

28 Keys, locks and alarm system
28 Key
29 Central locking
31 Keyless locking
32 Alarm system

33 Doors, windows and boot lid
33 Doors
33 Child safety lock on the rear doors
33 Protective door strip
34 Window – with electrical operation
35 Sliding/tilting roof
36 Sun visors – with electrical operation
36 Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes
37 Sun visors
37 Boot lid – with manual operation
37 Boot lid – with electrical control
38 Electrically operated contactless boot lid
39 Unlocking the boot lid

40 Seats, steering wheel and mirror
40 Front seat – with manual operation
40 Front seat – with electrical operation
41 Memory function of the seat
41 Seat massage function
42 Folding the backrests forward from the luggage compartment
42 Second row of seats
43 Park position of rear seat belts
43 Third row of seats
44 Headrests
44 Sleep package
44 Front armrest
45 Rear armrest
45 Steering wheel
46 Interior rear-view mirror
46 Wing mirror

48 Restraint systems and airbags
48 Seat belts
49 Child seat
51 Fasteners for child seats
54 Airbags
55 Key switch for the front passenger airbag

57 Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers
57 Exterior lighting
58 Daylight running lights
58 Automatic driving lights function
58 High beam and headlight flasher
58 Turn signal
59 Fog lights
59 Bad weather light
59 Rear fog light

59 Hazard warning lights function
60 Parking light function
60 CORNER function
60 Adaptive functions of the headlights
60 Function COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME
61 High-beam assist system Light Assist
61 Headlight Assist System Dynamic Light Assist
62 Interior lighting
62 Interior ambient light
63 Windscreen wipers and washers

65 Heating and air conditioning system
65 Manual air conditioning
66 Climatronic automatic air conditioning system
67 Auxiliary heating and ventilation
69 Heated windscreen
70 Seat heating and ventilation
71 Heated steering wheel

72 Driver information system
72 Analogue instrument cluster
73 Digital instrument cluster
76 Driving data
78 Speed limit warning
78 Vehicle status
78 Stopwatch in the instrument cluster
79 Personalization

81 Infotainment Swing
81 Infotainment overview
81 System
82 Screen
82 Infotainment keyboard
83 Control centre
84 Radio
86 Media
89 Mobile device management
91 Telephone
92 SmartLink

95 Infotainment Bolero
95 Infotainment overview
95 System
97 Screen
97 Infotainment keyboard
98 Voice control
100 Control centre
100 Radio
103 Media
107 Images
108 Mobile device management
109 Telephone
112 Wi-Fi
114 SmartLink

117 Infotainment Amundsen
117 Infotainment overview
117 System
118 Screen
119 Infotainment keyboard
120 Voice control
121 Control Centre
122 Radio
125 Media
128 Images
130 Mobile device management
131 Telephone
134 Wi-Fi
135 SmartLink
138 Navigation

143 Infotainment Columbus
143 Infotainment overview
143 System
144 Screen
145 Keypad
146 Voice control
147 Control centre
148 Radio
151 Media
154 Images
156 Mobile device management
157 Telephone
160 Wi-Fi
161 SmartLink
164 Navigation

169 Online Services
169 ŠKODA Connect
170 MyŠKODA application
170 User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services
171 Setting personal data protection
173 User management
174 User account
175 Personalisation
175 Management of online services
176 eSIM data connection
176 Online System Update
177 Shop
178 Information call
178 Breakdown call
178 Service schedules
179 Vehicle status report
179 ŠKODA Connect-Services

180 Starting and driving
180 Start
180 Starting issues
181 START STOP
181 Manual gearbox
182 Automatic gearbox
184 Vehicle driving mode
185 Economical driving style
185 Towing a trailer
186 Towing eye and towing procedure
187 Brakes

188 Electric parking brake
189 Auto Hold automatic holding function

190 Driver assist systems
190 Braking and stabilising systems
191 Front Assist
192 Pedestrian detection system
192 Speed limiter
193 Cruise control system
194 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
197 Lane Assist
198 Travel Assist
199 Lane change assist system Side Assist
199 Traffic Sign Recognition
200 Crew Protect Assist
201 Driver Alert
201 Emergency situation assist systemEmergency Assist
202 Hill descent assistant

203 Park Assist systems
203 Park Pilot parking aid
204 Rear view camera
205 Area View environment overview
206 Rear Traffic Alert
207 Park steering assistant
208 Trailer assist trailer manoeuvring aid

210 Engine, exhaust system and fuel
210 Bonnet
210 Engine oil
212 Coolant
213 Engine electronics
213 Particle filter
214 Exhaust control system
214 Fuel filter
214 Radiator blinds
214 Fuel filler flap
214 AdBlue ®
215 Petrol
216 Diesel

219 12 volt vehicle battery and fuses
219 12 volt vehicle battery
220 Using the jump-starting cable
221 Fuses
222 Fuses in the dash panel
223 Fuses in the engine compartment

225 Wheels
225 Tyres and rims
226 All-season or winter tires
226 Snow chains
227 Spare and emergency spare wheel
227 Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle
229 Breakdown kit
230 Tyre pressure
230 Tyre pressure monitor
231 Tyre pressure monitoring system
232 Wheel bolt cover caps
232 Full wheel frame

234 Storage space and interior equipment
234 Equipment in the boot
234 Emergency equipment
234 Tool kit
235 Storage compartment for the reflective vest
235 Fasteners in the boot
235 Bag hooks in the boot
236 Cargo elements in the luggage compartment
236 Fastening nets
236 Sliding hooks
236 Net partition
237 Double-sided floor covering
237 Floor covering in the boot
237 Roll-up luggage compartment cover
238 Variable loading floor in the boot
238 Partition in the boot
239 Interior equipment front
239 Interior equipment rear
240 Car park ticket holder
240 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door
240 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door
240 USB-connections
241 Hook on the centre body pillar
241 Glasses compartment
242 Pen holder
242 Storage compartment for card and coins
242 Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side
242 Third row of seats – drinks and telephone holder
242 Storage compartment under the front seat
243 Storage compartment for an umbrella
243 Phonebox
243 Cup holder
244 Cup holder Easy Open
244 Waste container
244 Ashtray and cigarette lighter
244 Folding table
245 Multifunction holder
245 Ceiling
245 Tablet holder
246 12-Volt power socket
246 230-Volt power socket
246 230 volt socket and USB connections
247 Storage compartment with air outlet nozzle

248 Roof rack and hitch
248 Roof rack
248 Swivelling hitch

251 Maintaining and cleaning
251 Service events
251 Service work, adjustments and technical changes

252 Interior
253 Exterior
254 Ice scraper

255 Technical data and specifications
255 Requirements for the technical data
255 Vehicle identification data
255 Maximum permissible weights
256 Operating weight
257 Vehicle dimensions
257 Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)
258 Personal data
258 Information about the radio systems in the vehicle
261 Information on trademarks
261 Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

263 Engine specifications
263 1.4 l/92 kW TSI engine
263 1.4 l/110 kW TSI engine
264 1.5 l/110 kW TSI engine
264 2.0 l/132 kW TSI engine
264 2.0 l/140 kW TSI engine
265 2.0 l/180 kW TSI engine
265 2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR engine
266 2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR engine

267 Index

About the Owner's Manual

General points

This Owner's Manual applies to all **chassis variants** of the vehicle, including all **models** and **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that **not all the trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **Illustrations** in these operating instructions are purely illustrative and are to be understood as general information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on the further development of all vehicles. It is therefore possible for changes to be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. The information contained in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be derived from the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual

Keeping environmental protection in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and vehicle maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes full information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available at the following places:

- In infotainment Bolero, Amundsen, Columbus
- On the ŠKODA web pages
- In the mobile application MyŠKODA

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-kodiaq

About the Owner's Manual

General points

This Owner's Manual applies to all **chassis variants** of the vehicle, including all **models** and **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that **not all the trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **Illustrations** in these operating instructions are purely illustrative and are to be understood as general information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on the further development of all vehicles. It is therefore possible for changes to be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. The information contained in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be derived from the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual

Keeping environmental protection in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and vehicle maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes full information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available at the following places:

- In infotainment Bolero, Amundsen, Columbus
- On the ŠKODA web pages
- In the mobile application MyŠKODA

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Video tutorials

When the following link or QR code is loaded, a website with video tutorials for selected vehicle functions will be displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-kodiaq

Tutorial videos

The video instructions are for illustration only, the images may differ from your vehicle.

After reading in the following reference or the QR code, the website with the vehicle offer is displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-kodiaq

Overview of video instructions

Overview of the video guides that are included in this manual.

- Activation and deactivation of Side Assist ***» page 199***
- Activation and deactivation of Lane Assist ***» page 198***
- Fatigue detection assistant - activation ***» page 201***
- Activation and deactivation of Light Assist ***» page 61***
- ACC – settings ***» page 197***
- Activation and deactivation of Front Assist ***» page 192***
- Contactless operation of the electric boot lid - activation and deactivation ***» page 39***
- KESSY – operation ***» page 32***
- Dynamic Road Sign Display – functioning ***» page 200***
- Emergency call ***» page 27***

Explanations

Terms used

“Specialist garage” – a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist company could be a ŠKODA service partner or a ŠKODA partner authorized to provide services or could also be an independent workshop.

“ŠKODA Service partner” – A workshop that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its sales partner to service ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

“ŠKODA Partner” – A company that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODAGenuine Parts and sell ŠKODAGenuine Parts.

Text notes

“Press” – short press (e.g. a button) within 1 second

“Hold” – Long press (e.g. a button) for more than 1 s

Direction indications

All direction indications such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear” relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units

The values are given in metric units.

If the units of length are given in miles, then these are English miles.

⚠ DANGER

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Texts marked with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in minor or moderate injury.

ⓘ NOTICE

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which, if the corresponding instructions are not observed, will result in damage to the vehicle.

ⓘ Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Instructions in infotainment

Functionality

You can display the Owner's Manual in the Infotainment system under MENU > > .

If is not displayed, check for available system updates.

The initial menu contains tiles with the contents of the manual and a search field.

- How to search
- Interactive images
- Symbols
- Topics
- Search
- Tutorial videos
- About the manual

Search

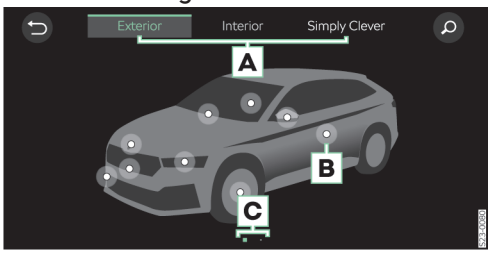
1. Tap .
2. Find the desired term and confirm it.

Or:

- Enter and confirm the desired expression in the search box with the magnifying glass symbol.

- To ensure a successful search, use specific language characters, e.g. å, æ, ø, ü, í, š.
- When entering a search term, use the words that the system offers according to the part of the search term you have already entered.
- If you download a manual in a language other than the factory set language, select the appropriate additional keyboard language for the search function. If no such language is available, select another language containing the necessary language characters.

Interactive images



A Switching between car interior/exterior and depending on vehicle equipment Simply Clever elements

B Displaying information or a detailed image

C Switching between images

Symbols

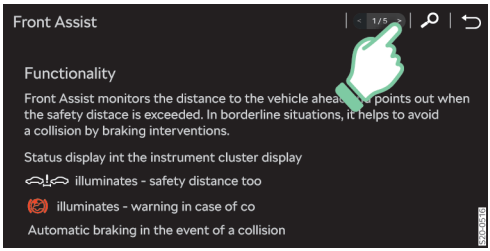
The menu contains an overview of all the indicator lights that can be displayed in the instrument cluster.

For each indicator light there is an explanation and a link to detailed information.

Topics – variant 1

The menu contains the complete contents of the manual arranged in chapters. Each chapter contains several topics.

After selecting a chapter and a topic, introductory information is displayed.

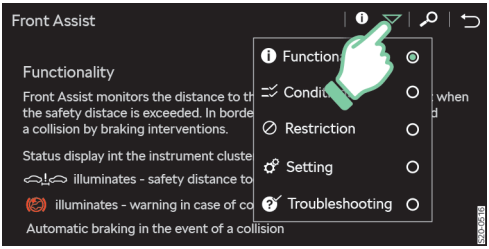


- To display more information, press > or <.

Topics – variant 2

The menu contains the complete contents of the manual arranged in chapters. Each chapter contains several topics.

After selecting a chapter and a topic, introductory information is displayed.



› To display more information, press ▼.

Tutorial videos

Depending on vehicle equipment.

› Link and QR–code to the website with all available video guides for your car

› Overview of the individual video guides

After selecting a video guide from the overview, a link and QR–code to the website with the corresponding video guide will be displayed.

Simply Clever

Depending on vehicle equipment.

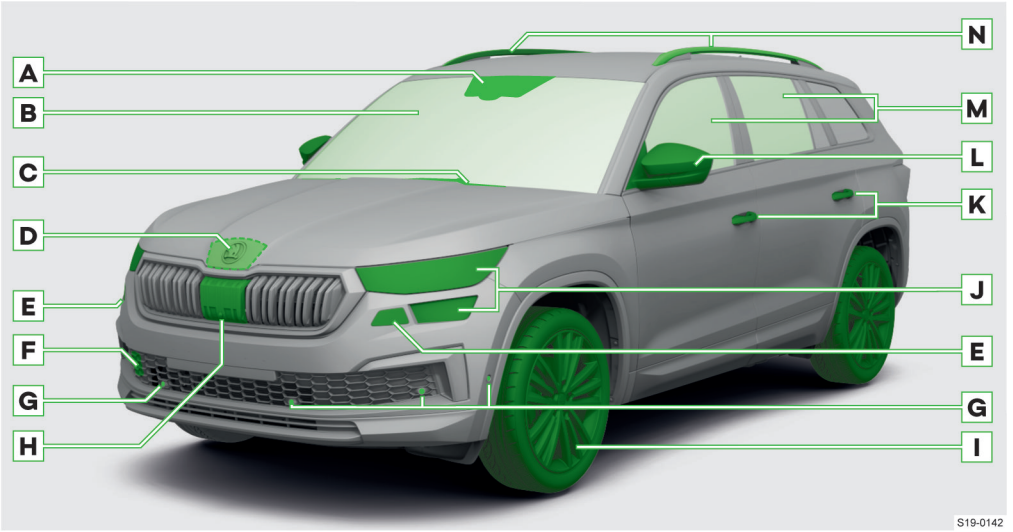
Overview of individual Simply Clever car equipment elements.

About the manual

The menu contains, for example, the choice of the language of the manual, updates and legal information.

Vehicle overviews

Front and lateral areas of the vehicle



- **A** Under the windscreen (depending on the vehicle equipment):
  - Camera for assist systems
  - Light sensor for automatic driving light circuit *» page 58*
  - Rain sensor for automatic wiping *» page 63*
- **B** Windscreen – heating *» page 70*
- **C** Windscreen wiper – operation *» page 63*
- **D** Bonnet release lever (under the flap) *» page 210*
- **E** Headlamp cleaning system *» page 63*
- **F** Cover for screw-in towing eye socket *» page 186*
- **G** Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems
- **H** Cover in the radiator grille (depending on the vehicle equipment):
  - Front radar sensor for assist systems
  - Camera for assist systems
- **I** Wheels:
  - Tyres and rims *» page 225*
  - Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle *» page 227*
  - Breakdown kit *» page 229*.
  - Tyre pressure *» page 230*
  - Tyre pressure monitor *» page 230*
  - Tyre pressure monitoring system *» page 231*

J Headlights (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Operation *» page 57*
- › Light Assist high-beam assist system *» page 61*
- › Headlight Assist System Dynamic Light Assist *» page 61*
- › Bad weather light *» page 59*
- › Fog lights - operation *» page 59*

K Door handles (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Open door *» page 33*
- › Keyless locking (KESSY) *» page 31*

L Rear-view mirror (depending on vehicle equipment):
- › Mirror adjustment *» page 46*
- › Cameras for assist systems

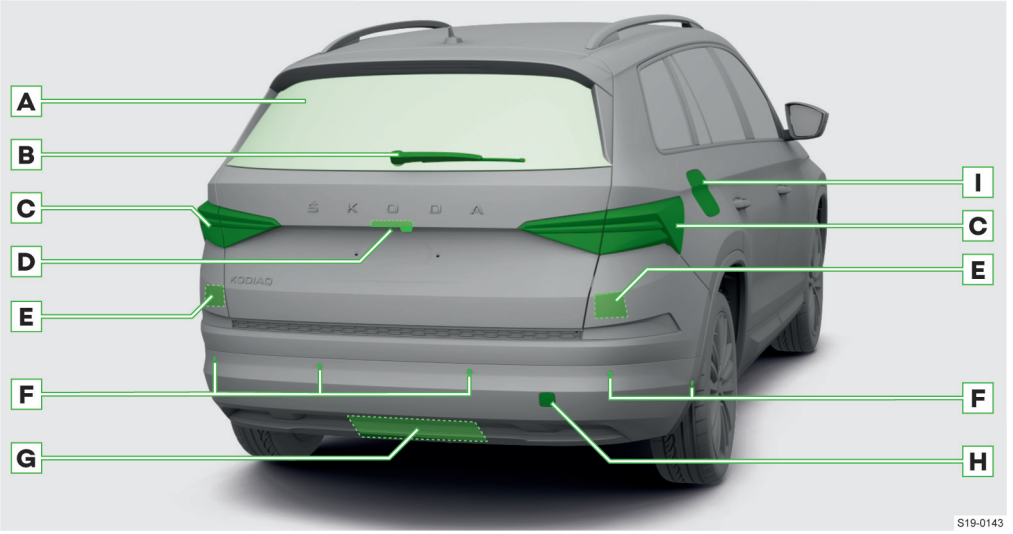
M Side door windows – operation *» page 34*.

N Roof rack *» page 248*

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean *» page 22*.

Rear vehicle area



A Rear window – heating » page 70

B Rear window wiper and washer – Operation » page 63

C Tail lights (depending on vehicle equipment):
- Operation » page 57
- Rear fog lights – operation » page 59

D Boot lid handle (depending on the vehicle equipment).
- Manually operated boot lid » page 37
- Electrically operated boot lid » page 37
- Camera for assist systems

E Radar sensors for assist systems (inside the bumper)

F Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

G Depending upon vehicle equipment:
- Swivelling tow coupling » page 248
- Electrically operated contactless boot lid » page 38

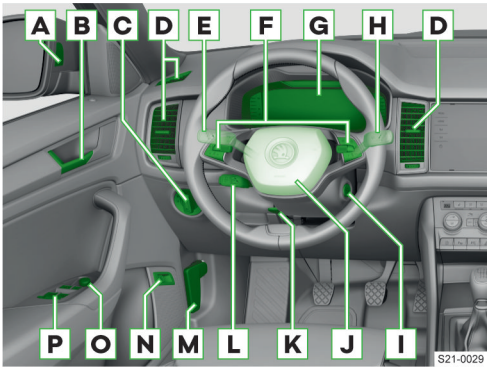
H Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » page 186

I Fuel tank lid:
- Opening » page 214
- Sticker with tyre pressure values » page 230
- Sticker with prescribed fuel
- Ice scraper
- Filler neck of the AdBlue®tank » page 214

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

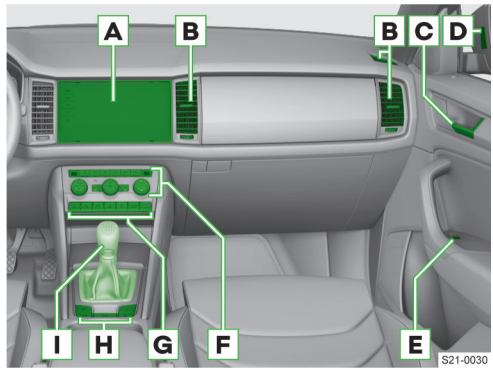
› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 22.

Driver's seat



- **A** Side Assist lane change assist system indicator light » page 199
- **B** Door opening lever » page 33
- **C** Light switch:
  - Exterior lighting
  - Bad weather light
    - Fog lights
    - Depending on the equipment
  - Rear fog light
- **D** Air outlet nozzle
- **E** Control lever (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - Turn signal
  - Main beam
  - Speed regulating system » page 194
  - Speed limiter » page 192
  - High beam assist system » page 61
  - Headlight Assist System » page 61
- **F** Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel » page 45
- **G** Depending upon vehicle equipment:
  - Analogue instrument cluster » page 72
  - Digital instrument cluster » page 73
- **H** Operating lever:
  - Windscreen wipers and washers » page 63
  - Analogue instrument cluster » page 72
- **I** Starter button » page 180
- **J** Steering wheel with horn/with driver's front airbag » page 54
- **K** Safety lever for steering wheel adjustment » page 45
- **L** Operation of the automatic distance control » page 195
- **M** Bonnet release lever » page 210
- **N** Button for the electric boot lid » page 37
- **O** Exterior mirror operation » page 46
- **P** Window operation » page 34.

Centre console and passenger seat



- **A** Infotainment (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - Columbus » page 143
  - Amundsen » page 117
  - Bolero » page 95
  - Swing » page 81
- **B** Air outlet nozzle
- **C** Door opening lever » page 33
- **D** Side Assist lane change assist system indicator light » page 199
- **E** Window operation in the passenger door » page 34
- **F** Operation (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - Manual air conditioning » page 65.
  - Climatronic » page 66
- **G** Buttons and indicator lights (depending on the vehicle equipment):

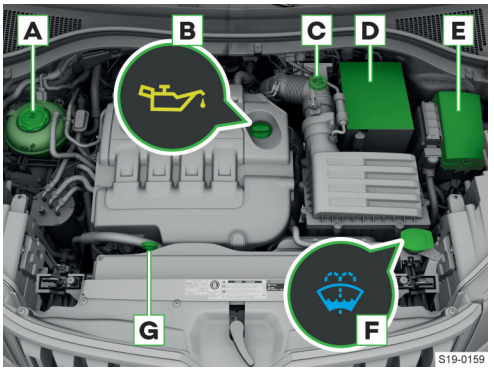
  Buttons:
  - Ⓐ START-STOP » page 181
  - P Park Assist » page 207
  - Surround View » page 205
  - P Park Pilot » page 203
  - Hazard warning lights function » page 59
  - Central locking » page 30

  Indicator lights:
  - Front passenger airbag ON / OFF » page 55
- **H** Keys (depending on vehicle equipment):
  - MODE Driving mode selection » page 184

- Auto Hold » page 189
- Parking brake » page 188
- Stabilisation Control ESC / Traction Control ASR » page 190
- Offroad mode » page 184

I Depending upon vehicle equipment:
- Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) » page 181
- Selector lever (automatic gearbox) » page 182

Engine compartment



A Coolant expansion reservoir » page 212

B Engine oil filler opening » page 211

C Brake fluid reservoir » page 187

D 12 volt vehicle battery » page 219

E Fuse box » page 223

F Windscreen washer fluid reservoir » page 63

G Engine oil dipstick » page 211

Warning lights

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the illuminated indicator lights and associated messages on the instrument cluster display may result in accidents, serious injury or damage to the vehicle.

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

The illumination of some of the indicator lights may be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the instrument cluster display.

Additional indicator lights

The additional indicator light will also light up in the display along with some of the indicator lights:

⚠ – Hazard

⚠ – Warning

Warning lights overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up briefly as a function test of the vehicle systems. If the tested systems are in order, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on or after the engine has been started.

For further details » *page 17, Functionality*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates a hazard in conjunction with another warning lamp » *page 17*.
	Front and rear seat belts not in use » *page 48*.
	12-volt vehicle battery is not charging » *page 220*.
	Along with  - Engine fault » *page 212*, » *page 220*.
	Engine oil pressure too low » *page 211*.
	Engine oil level too low » *page 211*.
	Coolant level too low » *page 212*.
	Coolant temperature too high » *page 212*.
	Brake fluid level too low » *page 188*.
	In conjunction with – brake system and ABS faulty » *page 191*.
	Flashes –parking on a slope that is too steep » *page 188*.
	Lights up – parking brake switched on » *page 188*.
	Lights up – power steering faulty » *page 45*.
	Flashes – steering column lock faulty » *page 45*.
	Automatic gearbox faulty » *page 183*.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » *page 183*.
	Take control immediately » *page 198*.
	AdBlue®level too low » *page 215*.
	AdBlue®system impaired » *page 215*.
	Warning of collision risk » *page 191*.
	ACC does not decelerate sufficiently » *page 195*.
	Indicates a warning in conjunction with another warning lamp » *page 17*.
	The petrol supply has reached the reserve area. » *page 216*.
	The diesel fuel level has reached the reserve area. » *page 218*.
	Washer fluid level too low » *page 64*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Bulb faulty » page 57.
	Rear fog light switched on » page 59.
	Engine oil level too high or engine oil level sensor faulty » page 211.
	Particle filter blocked » page 213.
	Parking brake error » page 188.
	ABS faulty » page 191.
	Worn brake pads » page 188.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 183.
	Automatic gearbox faulty » page 183.
	Water in the diesel fuel filter » page 214.
	AdBlue®system impaired » page 215.
	AdBlue®level too low » page 215.
	Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator faulty » page 231.
	Tyre pressure change » page 226, » page 230, » page 231.
	Lights up – power steering faulty » page 45.
	Flashes – steering column lock not unlocked » page 46.
	Flashes – steering column lock faulty » page 46.
	KESSY – start problem » page 180.
	KESSY – no key found » page 32.
	Adaptive suspension faulty » page 184.
EPC	Fault in the engine control system » page 213.
	Emission control system faulty » page 214.

Symbol	Meaning
	illuminates, or if it does not illuminate after the ignition is switched on – diesel preheating system is faulty » page 213.
	Flashing – Diesel engine control faulty » page 213.
ON	Front passenger airbag activated » page 55.
	Flashes in conjunction with OFF – key-operated switch for airbag deactivation faulty » page 56.
OFF	Front passenger airbag deactivated » page 55.
	Airbag system faulty » page 55.
	Crew Protect Assist faulty » page 201.
	Lights up for 4 s and then flashes – airbag or belt tensioner with diagnostic device switched off » page 55.
	Ball rod not locked » page 249.
	ESC Offroad is activated » page 184.
	ESC Sports enabled » page 191.
	ASR deactivated » page 191.
	Lights up – ESC or ASR faulty » page 191.
	Flashes – ESC or ASR intervening » page 190.
	Front Assist deactivated » page 191.
	Front Assist not available » page 192.
	ACC not available » page 196.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 197.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 197.
	Left turn signal » page 58, » page 59.
	Right turn signal » page 58, » page 59.
	Rear seat belt in use » page 48.

Symbol	Meaning
	Trailer turn signal light » page 59.
	Front fog light switched on » page 59.
	Bad weather light switched on » page 59.
	Gear lever is locked » page 182.
	Vehicle is secured by Auto Hold » page 189.
	Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 197.
	Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 197.
	ACC controls the driving speed » page 195.
	The cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 193.
	Lights up – speed limiter is regulating the vehicle speed » page 192.
	Flashes – the speed limiter's set limit has been exceeded » page 192.
	Travel Assist activated - the lane guidance is active » page 198.
	Travel Assist activated – the cruise control system is active » page 198.
	Travel Assist activated » page 198.
	Low outside temperature » page 72, » page 73.
	Main beam or headlight flasher switched on » page 58.
	Seat belt on the rear seat not in use » page 48.
	Seat belt on the rear seat in use » page 48.
	Seat belt on the rear seat not in use » page 48.
	Illuminated - unoccupied rear seat » page 48.
	Flashes – rear seat belt not fastened » page 48.
	Seat belt on the rear seat in use » page 48.

Symbol	Meaning
	Low outside temperature » page 73.
	Headlight assistant switched on » page 61.
	High beam Assist System switched on » page 61.
	The lights are not switched on » page 57.
	AdBlue®level too low » page 215.
	AdBlue®system impaired. » page 215.
	Take control » page 198.
	Adaptive suspension faulty » page 184.
	Service events » page 251.
	Engine was shut down automatically by START-STOP » page 181.
	Engine was not shut down automatically by START-STOP » page 181.
	Speed limiter faulty » page 193.
	Lights up – speed limiter activated » page 192.
	In conjunction with – speed limiter is regulating the vehicle speed » page 192.
	ACC not available » page 196.
	ACC activated » page 195.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching roundabout » page 195.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the road » page 195.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching junction » page 195.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed » page 195.
	Cruise control system faulty » page 194.

Symbol	Meaning
	Cruise control activated » page 193.
	Along with – cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 193.
	The Hill Descent Assist System is activated » page 202.
	Hill Descent Assist System intervenes » page 202.
	Front Assist deactivated » page 191.
	Front Assist not available » page 192.
	Front Assist is being activated » page 191.
	Safe distance not kept » page 191.
	Consumption-friendly driving » page 185.
	Break recommendation » page 201.
	Driving mode Normal » page 184.
	Driving mode Eco » page 184.
	Comfort Driving Mode » page 184.
	Driving mode Individual » page 184.
	Offroad driving mode » page 184.
	Driving mode Sport » page 184.
	Snow Driving Mode » page 184.

Correct and safe

Introductory notes for correct use

- Read this Owner's Manual carefully, as proceeding in accordance with this manual is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle.
- When using the vehicle, the generally binding legal provisions that are specific to the country must be observed. Such as those for transporting children, switching off airbags, using tyres, road traffic and the like.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights and loads.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load.
- Use the specified fuel and operating fluids.
- Drive on roads that meet the technical vehicle parameters. Obstacles that exceed the ground clearance of the vehicle » *page 257* can damage the vehicle when driving over them.
- Care must be taken during operations related to operation, maintenance and self-help to avoid damage to the vehicle or injury. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.
- All work on the vehicle's safety systems may only be carried out by a specialist garage. This concerns e.g. the seat belts or the airbag system.
- When using accessories, please note the instructions in the accessory manufacturer's instruction manual. These include child seats, roof racks, compressors etc.
- Please note the service intervals.

New vehicle or new parts

New vehicle - Running in the engine

Driving style during the first 1500 km determines the quality of the engine run-in process.

- During the first 1000 km, rev the engine to max. 3/4 of the highest permissible engine speed and avoid using a trailer.
- Over the next 500 km, the engine speed can be slowly increased.

Depending on driving style and operating conditions, the engine consumes some oil, up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Consumption may be higher over the next 5000 km.

New brake pads

New brake pads do not provide the optimum braking effect during the first 800 km, they have to be worn in first. Therefore, drive very carefully.

New tyres

New tyres do not have optimum grip for the first 500 km. Therefore, drive very carefully.

Regular checks

What should be taken into account before driving?

A vehicle with technical defects can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

Eliminate any defects before driving. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.

Pay special attention to the following points:

- Is the tyre undamaged?
- Is the tyre tread sufficient?
- Is the tyre pressure sufficient?
- Do the headlamps, brake and turn signals work?
- Is the windscreen in good condition?
- Is the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level OK?
- Is the air intake in the engine compartment free from obstruction?
- Are the air outlet nozzles or air intake in front of the windscreen free from obstruction?
- Are the windscreen wiper and washer system and windscreen wiper blades functional?
- Is the windscreen washer fluid level sufficient?
- Are the windscreen wiper blades in good condition?
- Are all seatbelt system components in good working order? Are the seatbelts clean and have the buckles been unclogged?
- Is the spoiler working properly?
- Are parts and components of the vehicle still visibly attached?
- Are there no oil stains or other operating fluids under the vehicle?

Improper vehicle adjustments

Improper changes and maintenance can cause malfunctions and affect safety-relevant and other functions of the vehicle.

› Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist garage.
› Never cover the engine with additional insulation material, e.g. with a cover.

Keep sensors and cameras functional

Some functions of your vehicle are supported by sensors and cameras inside and outside the vehicle.

Accessories additionally installed on the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the functioning of the sensors and cameras.

› Do not cover or stick over the sensors and cameras and keep them clean.
› If you suspect damaged sensors or cameras, seek the help of a specialist company.

Engine compartment

Before opening the engine compartment flap

Risk of scalding! Do not open the engine compartment flap if steam or coolant comes out of the engine compartment.

› Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
› Open the driver door.

Explanation of the warning symbols on the sticker in the engine compartment



Do not touch the engine compartment!
Be careful of hot parts!
Be careful of rotating parts!
Risk of electric shock!
Use prescribed engine oil.

When working in the engine compartment

› Keep children away from the engine compartment.
› Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan can turn itself on, even when the ignition is off.
› Do not touch electrical cables. Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, especially on the 12 Volt vehicle battery.
› Do not smoke near the vicinity of the engine and refrain from handling open flames or sparks.
› If you need to work in the engine compartment with the engine running, be mindful of rotating engine parts and electrical equipment.
› Do not leave any objects in the engine compartment.

Handling operating fluids

Your vehicle uses various operating fluids to operate that can affect health or the environment when they are emitted. These are fuel, oils, battery acid from the 12-volt vehicle battery, coolant and brake fluid or AdBlue®.

› Only use operating fluids outdoors or in well-ventilated areas. If required, wear protective equipment.
› Do not use or check operating fluids with the engine running.
› In the event of contact with operating fluids, wash affected areas with warm water. If required, seek medical help.
› The leaked engine oil in the engine compartment can cause a fire, so wipe it off with a cloth.
› Store cloths soiled by brake fluids in a well-ventilated place until disposal. Cloths with residues of engine oil can ignite and cause a fire.

12 volt vehicle battery

Handling the 12-volt vehicle battery

The battery acid of the 12-volt vehicle battery is very caustic. Improper handling of the 12 volt vehicle battery can cause an explosion, fire, chemical burns or poisoning!

› When handling the 12-volt vehicle battery, eye and skin protection must be worn.
› Do not tilt the 12-volt vehicle battery, as it may leak battery acid.
› If battery acid comes into contact with skin, wash the affected areas with water for a few minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.
› Do not charge a frozen or thawed 12-volt vehicle battery. Replace a frozen 12-volt vehicle battery.
› Do not use a damaged 12-volt vehicle battery.
› Short circuit! The battery poles of the 12-volt vehicle battery are not connected.

Electrical sockets in the vehicle

Improper use of the sockets can lead to life-threatening electric shock or fire.

- The sockets can get warm during operation. Do not touch sockets that have become warm.
- Protect sockets from liquids.
- If fluid does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
- Do not insert any objects into the contacts of the socket.

Before your journey

Adults and children, cargo and objects – everything has its place in the vehicle. Observe the following instructions so that all occupants are protected in the best possible way in the event of an accident.

Before you go

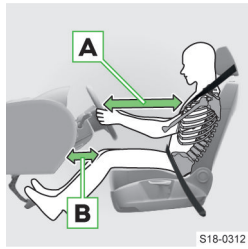
- Ensure that you have a good view of outside the vehicle. Attach external devices, e.g. navigation system, so that they do not restrict the view externally.
- Adjust the rearview mirrors.
- Close all doors and the engine compartment and boot flap.
- Take up the correct sitting position, adjust the seats correctly and fasten the seat belt properly. Ensure that passengers do likewise.

  Always leave the seat belt on while driving.
- Only one person can be secured with a seat belt.
- Make sure that the seat belts are not trapped, e.g. in the door or in the seat.
- Check seat belts, their locks and attachment points for damage.

Sitting safely

For the safety of the occupants and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed:

- Stand the backrests upright. If the front passenger seat backrest has been folded forward, only the seat behind the driver's seat may be used for transporting passengers.
- Engage the rear seat backrests correctly.
- Adjust the height-adjustable headrest so that the top of the headrest is as close as possible to the top of the head.
- On the occupied rear seat, the headrest should not be in the lower position although the upper edge of the headrest should be at the same height as the top of the head.
- Keep your feet in the footwell.
- Use the entire seat.
- Do not lean forward or sit to the side.
- Do not hold your limbs out the window.



- Adjust the driver's seat in the longitudinal direction so that the pedals can be fully pushed through with slightly bent legs.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance **A** between the steering wheel and sternum is at least 25 cm.
- For vehicles with driver's knee airbag, adjust the driver's seat longitudinally so that the distance **B** from the legs to the dash panel in the area of the knee airbag is at least 6 cm.
- Adjust the angle of the backrest so that the steering wheel can be reached at the top with your arms slightly bent.
- Move the passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of 25 cm from the dash panel.

Correct belt webbing arrangement



The webbing arrangement is extremely important for the seat belts to offer the best possible protection.

- The shoulder strap must run over the middle of the shoulder, must never run over the neck, and must lie firmly against the body (it must not run over loose layers of clothing).
- The lap belt part must be placed in front of the pelvis and fit tightly.
- In pregnant women, the lap belt part must be as low as possible on the pelvis, so that no pressure is exercised on the abdomen.
- The webbing must not be pinched or twisted and rub against sharp edges.
- The webbing must not pass over solid or fragile objects in clothing, such as a key ring, etc.
- The tongue may only be inserted into the buckle of the associated seat.

› The webbing must be tight. Therefore, do not attach clamps or similar items to the webbing for adjusting the seat belt according to body size.

Correct steering wheel position

Otherwise, you may experience serious injury to the arms, hands and head when deploying the airbag.



› Hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge in the “9 o'clock” and “3 o'clock” position.

Securing children properly

› Do not carry a child on your lap, and secure the child and yourself with a seat belt.
› Only transport children in a suitable child seat » page 50.

Children under 150 cm tall will not be properly protected without a child seat. Children that have been inadequately secured can be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident or a sudden manoeuvre. You can cause life-threatening injuries to yourself and other occupants.

If children lean forward or assume a wrong sitting position while driving, they are more likely to be injured in the event of an accident. This is especially true for children who are carried in the passenger seat – when the airbag system triggers, they can be seriously injured or killed!

A child that has been incorrectly secured in the wrong sitting position - endangered by the side airbag



The child should not be in the deployment area of the side airbag.

A child that has been properly secured in a child seat



There must be enough room between the child and the exit area of the side airbag for the side airbag to offer the best possible protection.

Transporting objects safely

When moving heavy objects, there is a shift in emphasis. Thus, the driving behaviour of the vehicle changes.

› Adjust driving speed and driving style to this changed driving behaviour.

Unsecured or misplaced items may be thrown around in the event of an accident or sudden manoeuvre. There is a risk of serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle!

In a rear-end collision at 50 km/h unsecured objects are thrown forward with up to 50 times their weight. A 1.5 litre water bottle is thrown with up to 75 kg.

› Transport objects securely.
› Stow objects so they do not hinder the driver.

Keep the driver footwell clear.

› Stow small items in the storage compartments.
› Do not leave lockable storage compartments open.
› Do not let items protrude out of the slots.

This note does not apply to bottles in bottle trays.

› Do not place any objects on the dash panel or on the luggage compartment cover.
› Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of fasteners and shelves.
› Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it, so that it cannot slip.
› Place heavy objects in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible.

Safe driving

Introductory notes

› Pay attention when you are driving! As a driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.
› Always adjust driving speed to the road conditions as well as the traffic and weather conditions.

Paying attention to warning signals

The driver information system warns you with indicator lights and messages in the event of any faults.

Failure to follow the warnings may increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

› If the vehicle issues a warning signal, then park the vehicle safely and follow the information in the instrument cluster, and in this Owner's Manual.

Use assistance systems

The assistance systems are only for support and do not absolve you from your responsibility for driving the vehicle.

The assistance systems are subject to physical and technical limitations. Therefore, in certain situations, system reactions may be perceived as undesirable or delayed.

› Stay alert and be ready to intervene.
› Familiarise yourself with the assistance systems, their limitations and operating conditions.
› Activate, deactivate and adjust the assistance systems so that you have full control of the vehicle in any traffic situation.

Driving with a substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel

A substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel » page 227 is only used to reach the nearest specialist garage.

› Inflate the wheel with the max. prescribed inflation pressure.
› Follow the instructions on the warning label on the rim.
› Do not cover the warning sign.
› Avoid full accelerations, strong braking and fast cornering.
› Do not drive with more than one mounted spare wheel.
› Avoid using snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.

Driving with a loaded roof rack

When transporting objects on the roof rack, the vehicle's driving behaviour changes.

› Adapt your speed and driving style to this.

Towing a trailer

The vehicle's handling characteristics change with a trailer. The assistance systems may behave differently.

› Drive more slowly, excessive speed can lead to loss of control of the vehicle.
› Keep a larger distance from the vehicle in front.
› Do not exceed the max. vertical load and the permissible trailer load.

Driving through water

There must be no water ingress into the vehicle systems e.g. into the engine's air intake system.

› Therefore, determine the water depth before driving through water. The water level must not exceed the lower edge of the lower beam.
› Drive at max. walking speed. Otherwise, a wave may form in front of the vehicle, increasing the water level.
› Never stop in the water, do not drive backwards and never stop the engine.

Is something wrong?

› Pay attention to changes in vehicle handling.
› If in doubt about safety, stop driving and seek the help of a specialist garage.
› Unusual vibrations or the vehicle 'pulling' to the side may indicate a puncture.
› If tyre pressure loss is very quick, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.
› Immediately remove foreign bodies stuck in the tyre tread.
› Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated into the tyre.

  Check the tyre pressure and seek the help of a specialised garage.
› Immediately remove any objects jammed under the floor of the vehicle. These can damage the vehicle or ignite and cause a fire.

Stop the vehicle safely!

A vehicle that has not been secured may roll away and cause accidents.

› For parking, look for a place with suitable ground.

  Do not park the vehicle on flammable materials such as dried leaves, spilt fuel. Hot vehicle parts can cause a fire.

Carry out the following activities in the specified order when parking.

› Stop the vehicle and keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› For vehicles with an automatic gearbox, put the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Turn off the engine.
› For vehicles with manual transmission, engage 1st gear or reverse gear.
› Release the brake pedal.

Exiting the vehicle

Do not leave children or other people or animals unattended in the vehicle!

› When handling the seats, releasing the parking brake, etc. injuries can occur.
› In emergency situations, children are not able to leave the vehicle on their own or help themselves.
› At very high or very low temperatures, there is danger to life!
› When locking the vehicle, the SAFE function switches on. As a result, no doors or windows can be opened from the inside.

Turn off the SAFE function if people are left behind in the locked vehicle » page 29.

Different weather conditions

If you wish to operate your vehicle in countries with different weather conditions from those specified, please contact a ŠKODA partner. They will tell you the following:

› Is it possible to operate the vehicle in your country?
› Is it necessary to take certain measures to ensure that the vehicle is fully functional?
› Is it necessary to take certain measures to avoid vehicle damage, e.g. B. changing the coolant, the 12-volt vehicle battery, etc.?

Emergency call

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

› Availability of a mobile network is indispensable for establishing a connection to the emergency number.
› This emergency service is only available in some countries.
› If the vehicle is located in an area without a functioning emergency call system infrastructure, no vehicle data shall be transmitted to the emergency call centre.

Functionality

After the start of the conversation, the emergency call centre also contains information as to the accident location and the severity of the accident, the number of occupants with seatbelts on and the vehicle identification number (VIN).

Once the connection has been established, communication with the emergency call centre takes place via the loudspeaker and microphone installed in the vehicle.

Serious accident – automatic call

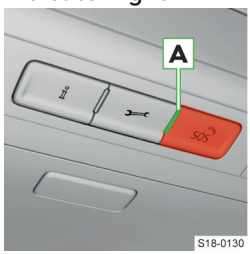
In the event of an accident where the airbag or belt tensioner activates, a call is automatically started with the emergency call centre.

The automatic call to the emergency call centre is also started after the Emergency Assist assistant system has intervened.

Minor accident – call option

The Infotainment screen displays the option to set up a connection to the emergency call centre or breakdown service.

Indicator light



The system status is displayed after the ignition is switched on, by the illumination of warning lamp A.

› Green – illuminated – the system is functional
› Green – flashing – a call is being made to the emergency call centre
› Red – lit up – there is a system failure, immediately seek the help of a specialist garage
› Not lit up – the system is out of order due to a long term unavailable mobile network, if this circumstance persists, the system will require the assistance of a specialist garage

⚠ WARNING

If there is a system fault, no emergency call is possible.

Operation

Manual call



› Keep the SOS button pressed down.
› Confirm the connection to the emergency call centre in the Infotainment screen.
› To cancel the connection to the emergency call centre before starting the call, press the SOS button again or confirm the cancellation of the connection in the Infotainment screen.

ⓘ Starting a manual conversation can then be used, for example, if you also report an accident in which you are not directly involved.

Video – emergency call

Emergency call – operation

http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-kodiaq-breakdown-call

After an accident

What to do after an accident

Where possible, please observe the following instructions:

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Put on the reflective vest.
- Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
- Report the accident to the emergency services.
- Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

Safety systems

After an accident, the safety systems of the vehicle, e.g. seatbelts and airbag system, may be out of action.

- Have the vehicle's safety systems checked by a specialist garage, even if no load or trip has occurred.
- Have damaged, loaded or triggered components of the safety systems replaced by a specialist garage.

What to do in the event of a fire

Where possible, please observe the following instructions:

- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Put on the reflective vest.
- Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
- Report the fire to the emergency services.
- Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

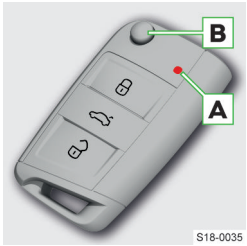
Keys, locks and alarm system

Key

Key Overview

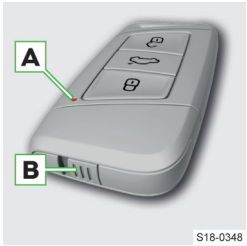
The vehicle has one of the following keys.

Key with pop-out key bit



- Locking the vehicle
- Operating the boot lid
- Unlocking the vehicle
- **A** Battery status warning light
- **B** Locking button for folding the key bit in/out

Key with removable key bit



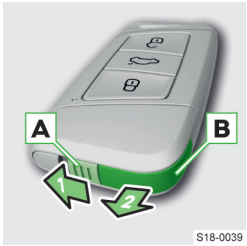
- Locking the vehicle
- Operating the boot lid
- Unlocking the vehicle
- **A** Battery status warning light
- **B** Locking tab for removal of the key bit

NOTICE

- Protect the key from moisture and strong vibrations.
- Keep the grooves in the key clean.

The effective range of the key signal is about 30 m. The effective range can be reduced, e.g. due to signal interference from other transmitters.

Removing the key bit



- Unlock the securing tab **A**.
- Remove the key bit **B**.



Troubleshooting

The battery in the key is almost empty

- After pressing a button on the key, the warning light does not flash.

Or:

- A message stating it is necessary to change the battery will be displayed.
- Replace the battery » *page 29, Changing the key battery*.

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control

There may be the following reasons:

- The battery in the key is empty.
- Replace the battery » *page 29, Changing the key battery*.
- The key is not synchronized.

Synchronize the key as follows:

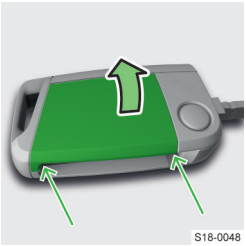
- Press any button on the key.
- Unlock the door within 1 minute with the key via the locking cylinder » *page 31*.

If necessary, the key must be synchronized if a favoured button on the key has been repeatedly pressed outside of the effective range of the remote control.

Changing the key battery

The new battery must comply with the specification of the original battery.

Key with pop-out key bit



- Fold out the key bit.
- Release the battery cover with your thumbnail or by inserting a flat-head screwdriver at the marked points.
- Open the battery cover.



- Remove the battery.
- Press any button on the remote key to reset the key.
- Insert the new battery.
- Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

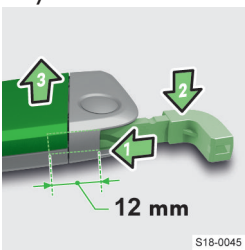
⚠ WARNING

Risk of death!

If the battery is swallowed, serious injuries or death due to chemical burns to the digestive tract could result.

- Always keep children away from the vehicle key and batteries.
- Obtain medical attention immediately if the battery is swallowed.

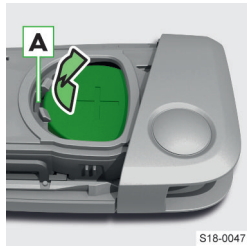
Key with removable key bit



- Remove the key bit and partially insert it into the opening.
- Press down on the key fob to release the top cover.



- Slide off the battery cover.



- Insert a thin screwdriver into the recess A and remove the battery.
- Press any button on the remote key to reset the key.
- Insert the new battery.
- Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death!

If the battery is swallowed, serious injuries or death due to chemical burns to the digestive tract could result.

- Always keep children away from the vehicle key and batteries.
- Obtain medical attention immediately if the battery is swallowed.

Environment

- The discharged battery does not belong in the household waste.
- Dispose of the discharged battery in an environmentally friendly manner.

Dispose of the charging cable in accordance with all applicable disposal regulations.

Central locking

Functionality

Central locking system

The system unlocks and locks all doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid at the same time.

Unlock indicator: double flashing of the indicator lights.

Lock indicator: single flashing of the indicator lights.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then it will start flashing regularly at longer intervals.

If none of the doors or the boot lid is opened within 45 seconds of unlocking, the vehicle automatically locks again.

SAFE function

Depending on the equipment, the central locking system can include the SAFE function.

The SAFE function prevents the doors from opening from the inside once the vehicle is locked.

The SAFE function is activated when the vehicle is locked from the outside.

In the display of the instrument cluster after the ignition is switched off, a message regarding the SAFE function is displayed.

⚠ DANGER

Risk of death!

› No people are allowed in the locked vehicle with the SAFE function.

Turn off the SAFE function

› By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

› Together with the deactivation of the interior monitoring *» page 32, Settings*.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then goes out and starts flashing regularly at longer intervals after about 30 secs.

When the SAFE function is switched off, the door can be opened from the inside by pulling once on the opening lever.

The SAFE function is switched on again after unlocking and locking the vehicle.

Operation

Ways in which central locking operates

Depending upon vehicle equipment:

› Key *» page 28*

› Keyless locking (KESSY)*» page 31*.

› Central locking button

Lock/unlock using the central locking button

› Press the button in the centre console.

The symbol in the button comes on when locked.

The button locks/unlocks all of the doors and the boot lid.

Unlocking of the vehicle also takes place when opening a door from the inside or when removing the key from the ignition.

⚠ WARNING

A locked vehicle with a central locking button makes it difficult for responders to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

Setting the unlocking and locking function

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

All doors

Unlocking of all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Single door

Using the button on the key, the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by touching the door handle.

When unlocked again, the other doors and the boot lid are unlocked.

Doors on one side of the vehicle

Using the button on the key, the doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the doors on the passenger's side near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by touching the door handle.

When unlocked again, the other doors and the boot lid are unlocked.

Automatic locking after starting

All doors and the boot lid are locked when a speed of 15 km/h is reached.

The vehicle is unlocked when a door is opened from the inside.

⚠ WARNING

An automatically locked vehicle makes it difficult for responders to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

Troubleshooting

Central locking fault

› The warning light in the driver's door first flashes for 2 secs in quick succession.

› Then it lights up continuously.

› After 30 secs, it flashes slowly.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

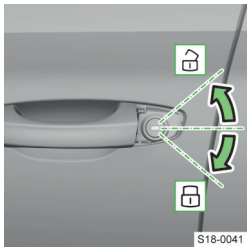
Mechanically unlocking and locking the door

Unlocking and locking the door with the lock cylinder



Remove the cover

- Pull on the door handle of the vehicle and hold it.
- Insert the key bit into the recess on the underside of the cover.
- Lift the cover in the direction of the arrow.
- Release the door handle.



Unlocking and locking using a key with a fold-out key bit

- Left-hand drive: Insert the key with the buttons facing **upwards** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock.
- Right-hand drive: Insert the key with the buttons facing **downwards** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock.

Unlocking and locking using a key with a removable key bit

- Insert the removed key bit with the handle facing **downwards** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock it.

Install cover

- Pull on the door handle and hold it.
- Replace the cover.
- Release the door handle.

Locking the door without the lock cylinder



- Open the door.
- For vehicles with a panel over the opening, remove the panel.
- Insert the key or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
- Turn the key or flat-head screwdriver towards the outside of the vehicle (spring-loaded position).

After closing, the door is locked.

Keyless locking

Usage

The keyless locking system (KESSY) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

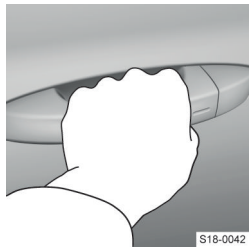
Operation

Keep the key with you when unlocking and locking.

The sensors on the handle are intended to be operated with bare hands, e.g. wearing gloves may affect the function of the sensors.

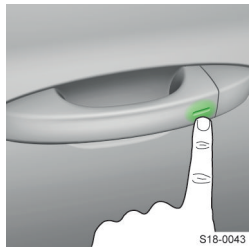
If the handle is dirty, the function of the sensors may be impaired.

Release



- Grab the door handle.
- Open the door.

Lock



- Touch the sensor.

After locking, it is not possible to unlock within 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

Unlocking the boot lid

- Press the handle of the boot lid.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

If the key is locked inside the vehicle, the vehicle will unlock itself automatically. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

If the key is locked in the boot, the boot lid will automatically unlock itself.

Settings

Deactivate keyless locking

- Lock the vehicle with the button on the key.

› Within 5 s, touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger.

Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

› To check the deactivation, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the door handle.

The door must remain locked.

Keyless locking is automatically activated once again after the vehicle is unlocked.

Troubleshooting

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked using the sensors on the handle

› Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.

› Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensors on the handle.

› If keyless locking does not work, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ⓘ If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function can be deactivated automatically.

When the ignition was switched on, no key was found

illuminates
Message that no key was found in the vehicle

› Insert the key into the vehicle.

Video – Keyless Locking (KESSY)

KESSY – operation
http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-kodiaq-kessy

Alarm system

Functionality

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals during a break-in or towing attempt.

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

The alarm system is automatically deactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Alarm triggering

The activated alarm system triggers an alarm when the following events occur:

› Opening the bonnet
› Opening the boot lid
› Opening the door
› Manipulation of the ignition lock
› Towing the vehicle
› Movement in the vehicle
› Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system
› Uncoupling the trailer
› Opening the door unlocked via the lock cylinder

Switching off the triggered alarm

› Unlock the vehicle.

Or:

› Turn on the ignition.

Operating conditions

For the correct functioning of the alarm system, all windows must be closed.

A trailer is integrated into the alarm system under the following conditions:

✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with a towing device.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the trailer socket.
✓ The trailer is not equipped with LED taillights.

If the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted on a vehicle with an activated alarm system, warning signals are triggered.

ⓘ Disable the alarm before connecting or disconnecting a trailer.

Settings

The following functions of the alarm system can be deactivated at the same time:

› Interior monitoring
› Towing protection

Deactivation will also switch off the SAFE function ***» page 29, Functionality***.

Deactivation

› By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

› In infotainment in the menu **CAR** > > > Menu item for interior monitoring

Or:

› In infotainment in the menu **MENU** > > > > Menu item for interior monitoring

The deactivated functions are reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked and locked again.

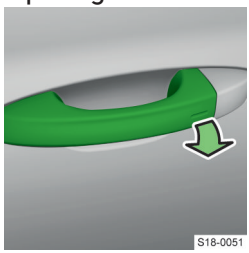
ⓘ Deactivation is to be carried out if the vehicle is, for example, towed or transported.

Doors, windows and boot lid

Doors

Opening/closing the door

Opening from the outside



› Unlock the vehicle and pull on the door handle.

Opening from the inside



› Pull the door opening lever and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

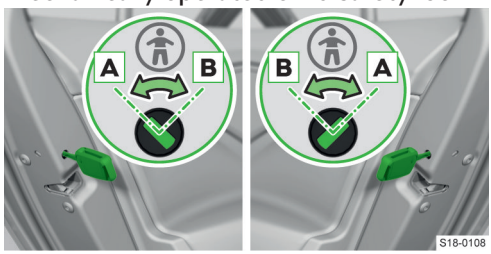
› Grasp the pull handle and close the door.

Child safety lock on the rear doors

Operation

The child lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Mechanically operated child safety lock



› Turn the child lock with the vehicle key or a flat-head screwdriver.

A Child lock switched off

B Child lock switched on

Electrically operated child safety lock



› Press the **left** button to switch on/off the child lock in the **left** rear door.

› Press the **right** button to switch on/off the child lock in the **right** rear door.

The fact that the child lock is switched on can be seen by the illuminated 🔒 displayed in the button.

After switching on the child lock the electric window is also blocked in the respective door.

Protective door strip

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the strip, the door and the body!

› Do not open the door too hastily or abruptly.

› Do not hold the door on the strip when opening and closing, as the strip must be able to move in and out freely.

› If the strip prevents the door from closing freely, do not close the door forcefully! Remove the strip, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Usage

Depending on the trim level, the doors can each be equipped with a protective strip. This moves out when opening the door and protects the central area of the door edge from damage.

When the door closes the protective strip retracts.

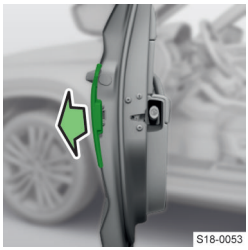
Self-help

Replacing the damaged strip

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

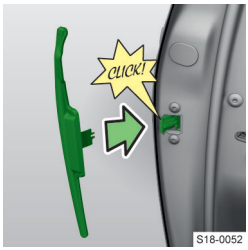
› Be careful when handling the strip.



› Remove the strip from the door.

ⓘ NOTICE

› If any part of the strip remains in the door, seek the help of a specialist garage.



› Insert a new strip in the grooves.
› Press in the strip.

ⓘ A new strip can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.

Window – with electrical operation

What you should be mindful of

Force limiter

To reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the windows, the vehicle has a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is interrupted and the glass pane retracts by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents it from being closed for the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the glass being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time, it is not possible to automatically close the windows by pulling the button all the way. The force limiter is, however, switched on.

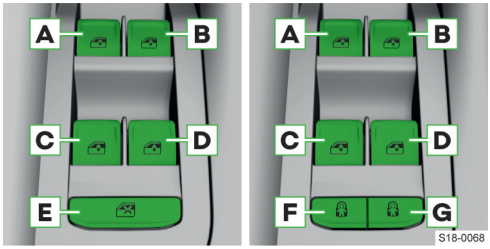
The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – the window will now close with full force! If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Close the windows carefully, even though they have a force limiter.

Overview of the operating buttons on the driver's door



Depending upon vehicle equipment:

A Front left window

B Front right window

C Rear left window

D Rear right window

E Deactivation/activation of the buttons in the rear doors

F Deactivation/activation of the key in the left rear door (part of the child safety lock with electric operation) *» page 33, Operation*

G Deactivation/activation of the key in the right back door (part of the child safety lock with electric operation) *» page 33, Operation*

Operation

ⓘ When the windows are open, irritating noises may occur at certain speeds.

Opening

› Press the corresponding button slightly downwards and hold it until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

› Press the corresponding button until it stops; the window opens automatically. Pressing the button again will stop the opening process.

Closing

› To close, pull gently upwards on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

› Pull the corresponding button until it stops; the window closes automatically. By pressing the button again, the closing process is stopped.

After switching off the ignition, the windows can still open and close for about 10 minutes so long as none of the doors are opened.

Open all of the windows at the same time

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and hold down the driver's window button until it stops.

Close all of the windows at the same time

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and pull upwards on the driver's window button until it stops.

Or:

› For vehicles with a keyless locking system, hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door.

Settings

The window operation is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > > > Menu item for window operation

Or:

MENU > > > > Menu item for window operation

Troubleshooting

The window regulator has stopped working after repeated opening and closing

The window regulator mechanism could have overheated.

› Allow the window regulator mechanism to cool down.

The window operation does not work after disconnecting the 12 volt vehicle battery

› Enable window operation » *page 35, Activation after disconnecting 12V car battery*.

Activation after disconnecting 12V car battery

Activate automatic window operation

› Turn on the ignition.

› Pull out the corresponding button and close the window.

› Release the button.

› Again pull out and hold the corresponding button for 1 s.

Sliding/tilting roof

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully, even though there is a force limiter.

ⓘ NOTICE

› During winter time, if necessary, remove any ice and snow around the area of the sliding/tilting roof before opening.

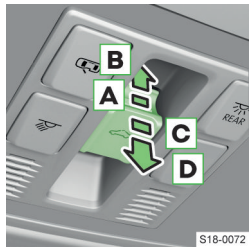
› Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the 12 volt vehicle battery.

Operating conditions

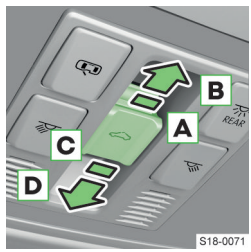
✓ Ignition on

✓ The outside temperature is higher than -20 °C (applicable for the opening of the sliding/tilting roof).

Operation



A Gradual opening
B Complete opening
C Gradually reset
D Fully reset



A Gradual opening
B Full opening
C Gradual closing
D Complete closing

After moving the switch to the position B the sliding/tilting roof is in the low-noise position (at a speed of about 80 km/h).
After another movement to position B the sliding/tilting roof opens completely.

After switching off the ignition, the sliding / tilting roof can be operated for about 10 minutes as long as none of the doors are opened.

Comfort operation of the tilting/sliding sunroof

The comfort operation makes it possible to lock the sliding/tilting roof with the key if necessary.

› Press and hold the button to **turn it off**.
› Press and hold the button to **close** it.

On vehicles with a keyless locking system, it is possible to **close** the sliding/tilting roof via the sensor in the door handle of the front door.

› Hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door *» page 31*.

Troubleshooting

Operation of the sliding/tilting sunroof does not work after disconnecting the 12-volt vehicle battery

› Activating operation of the sliding/tilting sunroof *» page 36*.

Activation after disconnecting the 12-volt vehicle battery

Activating operation of the sliding/tilting sunroof



› Turn on the ignition.
› Pull the switch all the way down and hold it down.

After about 10 secs, the sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again.

› Release the switch.

Sun visors – with electrical operation

Operation



Opening
Closing

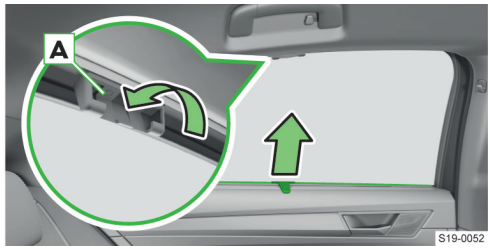
› Press or hold the button to **move** the roller blind.
› Press or release the button to **stop** the roller blind from moving.

Activation after disconnecting 12V car battery

› Turn on the ignition.
› Hold the button. The sunshade will open and close again.
› Release the button.

Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes

Operation



Brightness protection

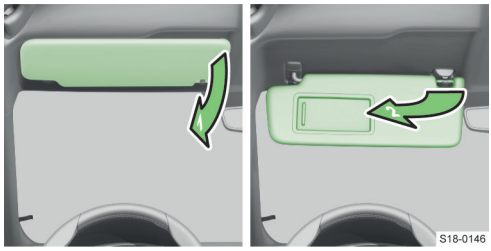
› Pull out the sun protection blind by the handle and hang it into the holder A.

Rolling up

› Remove the sun protection blind from the holder at the handle and let it roll in slowly.

Sun visors

Folding up and folding down



1 Swivel the front visor towards the windscreen
2 Swivel the visor towards the door

⚠ CAUTION

Objects attached to the sun visors can restrict the view to the outside.
In the event of sudden braking or an impact, these can also cause injuries.
› Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

Boot lid – with manual operation

Operation

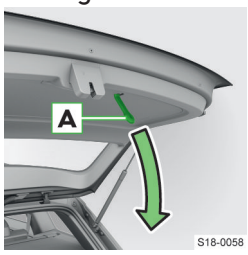
Opening



› Press the handle and lift the lid.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once a speed of 5 km/h is reached. This is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Closing



› Grasp the fixture A and pull the lid down.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!
› Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the tailgate.

Set a delayed lid lock

If the lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The period after which the lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

Boot lid – with electrical control

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!
› Only operate the tailgate when there is nobody or no objects in the swivel area.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Do not manually close the tailgate when moving.
› Before operating the tailgate, check that there are no objects in the swivel area that could damage the tailgate. Also check that there are no objects within the immediate vicinity of the vehicle that could damage the vehicle interior and the transported objects.
› If the tailgate hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

Operation

Handle in the tailgate



› Press the handle to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

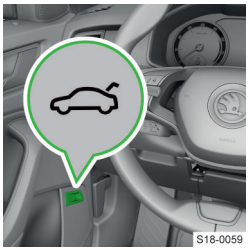
The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once a speed of 5 km/h is reached. This is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Button in the tailgate



› Press the button to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

Button in the door



› To open the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate starts to open.

› To close the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate is fully closed.

› To stop the movement of the tailgate, pull or release the button.

Button on the key



› Press the button to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

The option to lock exists only on vehicles with a keyless locking system. The key must not be in the vehicle and must be at a distance of max. 2 m from the tailgate.

ⓘ The tailgate can also be closed by pulling it briefly downwards.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!

› Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the tailgate.

Settings

Set the uppermost position of the tailgate and store it

It makes sense to set the top position of the tailgate, e.g. setting for the opening of the tailgate in a limited space due to the garage height.

› Stop the tailgate in the desired position.

› Press the button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Re-adjusting the top starting position of the tailgate

› Carefully raise the tailgate manually to the limit.

› Press the button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Troubleshooting

The tailgate does not react to the opening signal

› There is a possible obstacle, e.g. snow; remove it.

Or:

› Press the handle in the tailgate and lift the lid.

Or:

› Mechanically unlock the flap » page 39.

The tailgate does not react to the closing signal

› Close the tailgate manually.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Close the tailgate slowly, push down the tailgate and push in the lock on the centre of the rear edge of the tailgate.

ⓘ When automatically closing the tailgate, e.g. under the weight of snow, a broken beep sounds.

Electrically operated contactless boot lid

Operating conditions

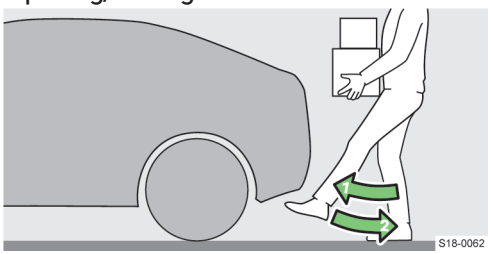
✓ The ignition is switched off.

✓ You have the vehicle key with you.

✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Opening/closing the lid



› Stand in the middle behind the bumper.

› Move one foot quickly under the bumper and remove it again.

If the lid doesn't move, wait a few seconds and repeat the swing motion.

Display of the opening / closing process

The rear turn signal lights come on when the flap is opened and closed. When you close the lid, audible signals are sounded.

Stopping/ restoring lid movement

The lid movement can be stopped by a rapid swinging motion with your foot. Lid movement is restored by a subsequent swinging motion with your foot.

Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- Downpour
- Dirty rear bumper

Settings

Activation/deactivation

- In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

We recommend that the function is deactivated in the following cases:

- Installation of a roof rack
- Coupling a trailer or another accessory to the hitch
- Car wash
- Maintenance and repair work in the back of the vehicle

Video - Contactless operation of the electric flap

Contactless operation of the electric flap - activation

http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-kodiaq-virtual-pedal

Unlocking the boot lid

Release

If the boot lid does not open, it can be unlocked manually by the following procedure.

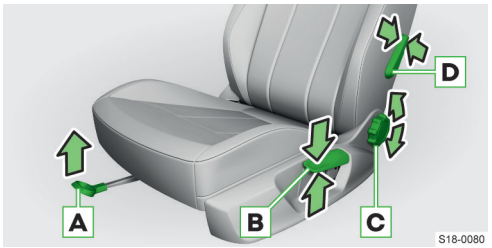


- Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the panel.
- Release the tailgate by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Seats, steering wheel and mirror

Front seat – with manual operation

Controls on the seat



A Adjust in a longitudinal direction
After releasing the control lever the latch must engage audibly.

B Adjusting the height

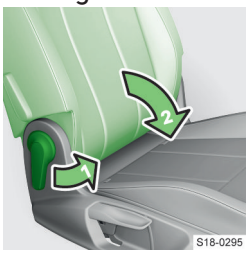
C Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest
Adjusting the angle of the backrest - do not lean against the backrest during adjustment

D Adjusting the lumbar support Set the extent of the curvature

1 After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Folding passenger seat backrest

Folding down



- Pull on the operating lever.
- Fold the backrest forwards until it clicks into place.

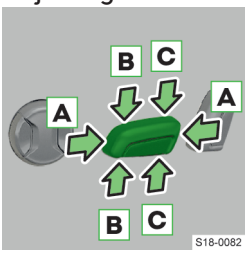
Folding back up

- Pull on the operating lever.
- Press the backrest backwards until it audibly clicks into place.

Front seat – with electrical operation

Controls on the seat

Adjusting the seat

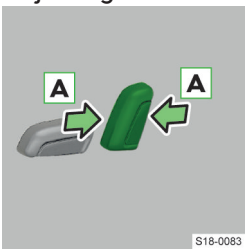


A Adjust in a longitudinal direction

B Adjust the inclination

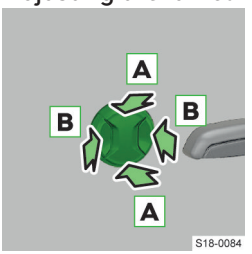
C Adjusting the height

Adjusting the seat back



A Adjust the inclination

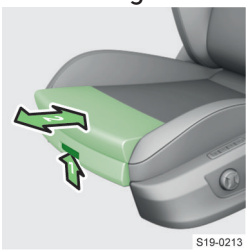
Adjusting the lumbar support



A Set the position of the curvature

B Set the extent of the curvature

Set the length of the seat manually



› Press the release handle.
› Push the front part of the seat forwards or backwards.

Memory function of the seat

Functionality

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

Each of the memory buttons on the driver's seat can be used to store and recall the set driver's seat and exterior mirror position.

Depending on the equipment, the front passenger seat may also have a memory function.

Operation

Retrieve stored position

› With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** the desired memory button.
› In other instances, **hold** the button for example with the ignition switched on or the driver's door closed.

The passenger seat position can be retrieved in the same way.

Stop position change

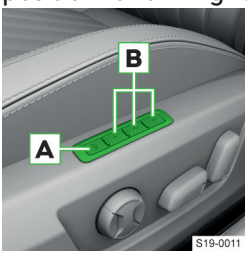
› With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** any button on the seat to be adjusted.

Or:

› Press the button on the key.
› In other cases, **release** the held memory button.

Settings

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror position for driving forwards



› Turn on the ignition.
› Adjust the seat and the exterior mirrors.
› Press the button A and within 10 seconds one of the memory buttons B.

Storing is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

The seat position can be stored if the angle of inclination of the seat back relative to the seat surface is less than approximately 110° and the seat is not in any of the end positions.

Save front passenger seat position

Storing the passenger seat position is analogous to storing the driver's seat position.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror position for reversing

› Turn on the ignition.
› Activate the folding function of the mirror in the Infotainment in the following menu:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

› Turn the exterior mirror knob to the position **R**.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The set mirror position is saved.

When changing the stored seat and exterior mirror position for forward driving, the passenger exterior mirror position for reverse driving must be restored.

Seat massage function

Turn on/turn off



› Press the button.

Function switches off automatically after 10 minutes.

⚠ CAUTION

› Only switch the function on and off when the vehicle is stationary.

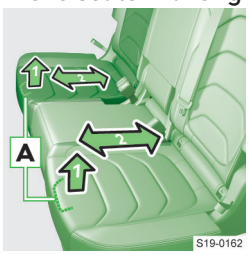
Folding the backrests forward from the luggage compartment



Second row of seats

Setting the second row of seats

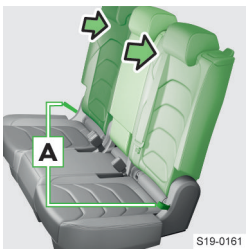
Move seats in a longitudinal direction



› Pull the lever A and move the seat.

The seat must audibly click into place.

Adjusting the inclination of the seat backrests



› Pull on the loop A and adjust the inclination of the seat backrests.

The rest must click into place.

Access to the third row of seats

Applicable to the seven-seater variant of the vehicle.



› Pull the release handle.
› Fold the seat back forwards and move the seat forwards.



› To get to the third row of seats more easily, attach the seat belt to the strap.

Set the seat in the starting position

› Adjust the seat forwards/backwards
› Fold the seat backrest back up.
› Check this by pulling on the seat and on the seat backrest.

Folding down the seat backs

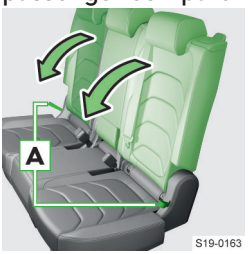
Before folding down

NOTICE

Risk of damaging the fins of the air outlet nozzles and the front seats.

› Adjust the headrests of the second row of seats so that they are as low as possible.
› Adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded-down seat backrests.

Folding the backrests forwards from the passenger compartment



› Pull on the loop A.
› Fold the backrest forwards until it clicks into place.

Folding the backrests forward from the luggage compartment



› Pull on the lever.

The backrest is unlocked and partly folded forwards.

› Fold the backrest forwards until it clicks into place.

Fold back the backrests

› Pull on the loop.
› Press the backrest backwards until it audibly clicks into place.

Fold the middle backrest forwards



› Press the safety button and fold the backrest forwards.

Fold the middle backrest backwards

› Press the backrest backwards until it audibly clicks into place.

Park position of rear seat belts



Third row of seats

Folding the third row of seats upwards and forwards

Before folding down

› Move the second row of seats forwards.

› Remove the roll-up luggage compartment cover.

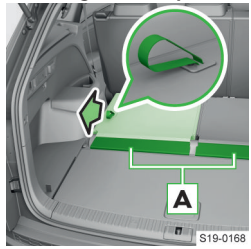
Folding down



› Press the release handle.

› Fold the seat backs forwards.

Folding back up



› In vehicles with a variable loading floor, the folding components A are placed on the variable loading floor.

› Pull on the loop.

The seat backrest mechanism must audibly snap into place.

Before folding up

› Release the latches of the seat belts.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to belt buckles, buckle tongues and seats.

› The straps must be fully retracted.

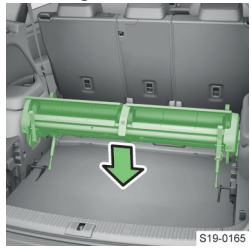
› Fold the seat backs forwards.

Folding up



› Pull on the loops at the same time.

Folding down

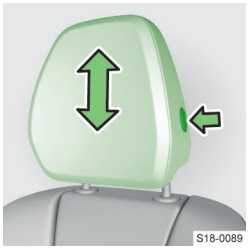


› Press on the seats.

Headrests

HeadrestsAdjusting the height

Front headrests



› Hold the safety button and move the headrest in the desired direction.

Headrests in the second row



› Move the headrest in the desired direction.

When pushing down, press and hold the safety button.

Headrests in the third row



› Move the headrest in the desired direction.

When pushing down, press and hold the safety button.

Folding side bolsters on the rear headrest

The folded down side bolsters reduce uncontrolled sideways head movement , e.g. when sleeping.

› Adjust the headrest to the initial pulled out position.



› Fold down the side bolsters on the head rest.

Removing and inserting the rear headrests

Removing

Applies to the second row of seats.



› Partially fold the respective seat back forwards.

› Move the headrest up to the stop.

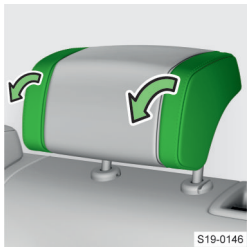
› Press the safety button and remove the support.

Inserting

› Insert the headrest into the seat backrest.

The safety button must click into place.

Sleep package



The package includes folding side bolsters for the headrest and a bag with a blanket.

Front armrest

Settings



Adjusting the height

› Raise the backrest to one of the locked positions.

Folding down

› Raise the backrest beyond the highest locked position and fold it down again.

Adjust in a longitudinal direction

› Move the backrest to the desired position.

Rear armrest

Settings

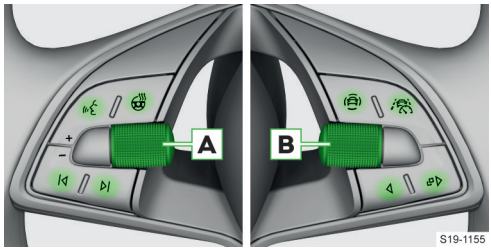


› Fold down the armrest.

The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

Steering wheel

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel



- Switch voice control on/off
- Heated steering wheel » page 71
- A **Rotate** - Adjust the volume
  Press - Switch the sound off/on
- Switch to the next track/station played
- Switch to the previous track/station played
- Show menu of assistance systems
- Turn on Travel Assist assistance system » page 198
- B Depending upon vehicle equipment:
  - › Operating an analogue instrument cluster » page 72
  - › Operating a digital instrument cluster » page 74
- Depending upon vehicle equipment:
  - › Operating an analogue instrument cluster » page 72
  - › Operating a digital instrument cluster » page 74
- Depending upon vehicle equipment:
  - › Operating an analogue instrument cluster » page 72
  - › Operating a digital instrument cluster » page 74

Setting the steering wheel position

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.



› Swing the safety lever downwards.



› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



› Press the safety lever as far as it will go.

Troubleshooting

Power assisted steering faulty

illuminates – total failure of the power assisted steering, failure of steering assistance

› Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.

› If the indicator light does not go out, do not continue. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

illuminates - partial failure of the power assisted steering, possible reduction in steering assistance

› Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.

› If the indicator light If the warning light does not go out, you can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Steering column lock faulty

flashes

Message regarding a fault in the steering column lock

› Stop the vehicle.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to switch on the ignition, to lock the steering and to switch on the electrical components.

flashes
Message regarding a fault in the steering lock

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Steering column lock not unlocked

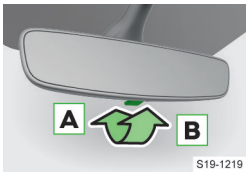
flashes
Message concerning the required steering wheel movement

› Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth.
› If the steering does not unlock, stop the vehicle and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Interior rear-view mirror

Operation

Interior mirror with manual darkening



A Mirror is not darkened
B Mirror darkens

Interior mirror with automatic darkening

Darkening of the mirror is automatically controlled through the sensors in the mirror once the engine is started.

⚠ CAUTION

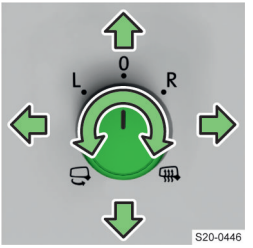
Risk of an accident!
A glowing display e.g. a mobile phone or navigation device may affect the function of the automatic mirror darkening.
› Do not attach these devices close to the mirror.

Wing mirror

Operation

Depending on the equipment, the mirrors can be folded in manually or electrically.

Positions of the rotary knob



L Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror
0 Switch off operation
R Adjust the right-hand exterior mirror
Fold mirror in electrically (to fold back out, select a different position of the rotary knob)
Heat the mirror when the engine is running

Adjusting the mirror surface

› Select position **L** or **R**.
› Turn the rotary knob in the direction of the arrows.

Folding electrically folding mirrors automatically

If this function is activated, the mirrors are folded in when the vehicle is locked and folded back when it is unlocked.

ⓘ Locking of the vehicle is not indicated by the fact that the mirrors fold in. Locking of the vehicle is indicated by the turn signal lights flashing.

Manually foldable mirrors

› Fold the mirror towards the side window by applying pressure with your hand.

Setting the mirror surfaces synchronously

If this function is activated, the mirror surface of the passenger mirror is also set when the mirror surface of the driver's mirror is set.

Mirror with memory function

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The current setting for the exterior mirror surfaces can be stored in the memory of the driver's seat » *page 41*.

Lower the passenger mirror surface when reversing

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The mirror surface of the passenger mirror takes in the memory of the driver's seat » *page 41* stored position to improve visibility when reversing.

Operating conditions:
✓ The function can be activated in Infotainment.
✓ The mirror position is saved.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The adjustment knob is in the **R** position.

The mirror automatically resumes the home position when driving forward at speeds above 15 km/h or after the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
The exterior mirrors make objects appear farther away.
› Use the rear-view mirror to determine the distance from vehicles behind.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of mirror damage!
› If the electrically foldable mirror is swung out by external influences, e.g. due to an impact during manoeuvring, fold the mirror in using the rotary knob and wait for an audible folding sound.

Settings

Activation or deactivation of the automatic folding of the exterior mirrors, the synchronous adjustment of the mirror surfaces as well as the lowering of the passenger-side mirror surface when reversing are carried out in the Infotainment in the following menu:

CAR > ⚙ > 🪞

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > 🪞

Troubleshooting

Electrical operation of the mirror surfaces disturbed

› Press lightly on the edge of the mirror surface with your fingers to adjust it.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burns!
› Do not touch heated exterior mirror surfaces.

Restraint systems and airbags

Seat belts

Usage

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer very good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed or altered in any other way.
- If the driver's seat belt is damaged, stop driving.
- If another seat belt is damaged, the seat must not be occupied.
- Do not repair damaged seat belts yourself.
- Have a damaged seat belt replaced immediately by a specialist garage.

Functionality

Automatic belt retractor

The automatic retractor locks the belt in the event of a jerky pull on the belt. The belts lock, for example, when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

⚠ WARNING

- If the seat belt does not lock when pulled jerkily, have the retractor checked by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

The safety for the driver, front passenger and the two passengers on the outer seats of the second row of seats **who are wearing seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front seats and the outer seats of the second row of seats.

If there is a collision with a certain severity, the seat belt is tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body movement is prevented.

The belt tensioner can also be deployed when the seat belt is not fastened.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of a roll-over, **minor** collisions or in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

ⓘ Smoke is released when the belt tensioner is deployed. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Reversible belt tensioner

Vehicles with a proactive occupant protection system include reversible belt tensioners.

The reversible belt tensioners increase safety for the belted driver and front passenger by automatically tightening the seat belt tightly over the body in critical driving situations and then releasing it again.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

Depending on the type of display, the display can be as follows:

Illuminates or flashes – a front or rear seat belt is not fastened

Illuminates – rear seat not occupied

Flashes – a rear seat belt is not fastened

Illuminates or flashes – a rear seat belt is not fastened

Illuminates – a rear seat belt is not fastened

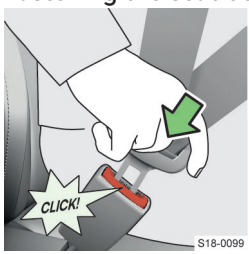
illuminates – a rear seat belt is fastened.

illuminates – a rear seat belt is fastened.

illuminates – a rear seat belt is fastened.

Operation

Fastening the seat belt



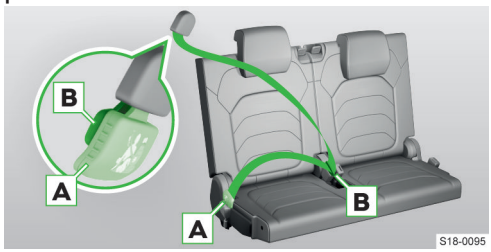
- Grasp the buckle latch and slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis towards the buckle.
- Insert the buckle latch into the buckle until there is an audible click.
- Pull on the belt to ensure that the buckle is securely fastened.

Unfastening the seat belt



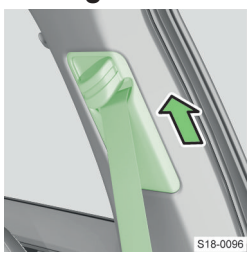
- Grasp the buckle latch and release it by pressing the red button.
- Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

Put on belt with two buckle latches and put down

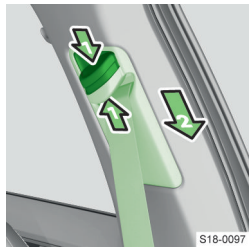


- Pull the belt slowly by the buckle latch **A** to **put it on**.
- Insert the buckle latch **A** into the buckle until there is an audible click.
- Use the buckle latch **B** to slowly pull the belt over your chest and pelvis.
- Insert the buckle latch **B** into the second buckle until there is an audible click.
- Pull on the belt to ensure that the buckle latch is securely fastened.
- **To take it off** take the buckle latch **A** and release by pressing the red button.
- Grasp the buckle latch **A** and release it by pressing the red button.
- Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

Settings



- Move the seat belt height adjuster upwards to increase the height.



- Press the safety button and move the seat belt height adjuster down to reduce the height.
- After adjustment, firmly pull on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place and that the belt is locked securely.

Troubleshooting

Blocked belt retractor



- Hold the strap in the middle and pull smoothly.
- Hold the strap and let it roll up slowly.
- Pull on the strap to see if the retractor is working properly.
- If the strap is still blocked, repeat the unlocking procedure once or twice.
- If the strap is still blocked, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Child seat

What you should be mindful of

To install and use the child seat, follow the instructions in this Owner's Manual as well as the child seat manufacturer's manual.

For safety reasons, we always recommend that children are transported in the back seats using the child seat with the ISOFIX.

Transport children in the front passenger seat only in exceptional cases. We also recommend you to use the child seat with the ISOFIX.

Only use child seats that comply with the regulations ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 of the European Economic Commission.

Child seats in accordance with the standards ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 are marked with: a large E in a circle, with the test number below.

We recommend using child seats from the Škoda Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been tested for use in Škoda vehicles and comply with the ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129 regulation.

ⓘ NOTICE

Incorrectly attaching the child seat or installing a non-approved type of child seat can cause irreversible damage to the ISOFIX system, the retaining rings and other vehicle parts.

⚠ WARNING

- When installing the child seat in the rear seat, adjust the front seat so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child carried in the child seat.
- Before installing a forward-facing child seat, adjust the headrest so that it is as low as possible.
- If the headrest prevents the child seat from being fitted, adjust the headrest to the highest position.
- When fitting a child seat, avoid contact between the seat and the ceiling and the rear pillar of the vehicle body. If the head airbag is deployed, there is a risk of injury.
- If using a separate child seat cushion, adjust the headrest so that the child's head is flush with, but not protruding above, the top edge of the headrest.

ⓘ NOTICE

Incorrectly attaching the child seat or installing a non-approved type of child seat can cause irreversible damage to the ISOFIX system, the retaining rings and other vehicle parts.

- When installing the child seat, push it all the way up against the backrest so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the backrest.
- For a child seat with a support leg, adjust the height of the support leg so that there is stable contact between the child seat and the vehicle seat, and so that it is secured against movement.

Using a child seat on the front passenger seat

When using a child seat on the passenger seat, any country-specific regulations must be observed.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death or serious injury to the child!

- Never use a child seat in which the child is carried with his or her back to the direction of travel on a seat protected by an active airbag placed in front of the seat.

This is also indicated by the following stickers:



A Sticker on the passenger sun visor

B Sticker on the central body pillar on the passenger side

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat:

- It is essential to deactivate the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is transported with its back facing the direction of travel » page 55.
- If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is vertical, to ensure that there is secure contact between the backrest and the child seat.
- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and a child seat that could be placed behind it.
- Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the seat belt causing a neck injury to the transported child!

- For child seats in groups 2 and 3, ensure that the guide fitting attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the seat belt height adjuster on the central body pillar.
- Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt passes through the guide fitting without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

⚠ WARNING

- As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the front passenger seat, activate the front passenger airbag again.

Recommended child seats

[1] We recommend using child seats from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range. These child seats have been developed and tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They are approved for these vehicles and meet the standard ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129.

Classification into weight groups

Grouping of child seats according to standard ECE-R 44.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9-18 kg
2	15-25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Recommended child seats

Group	Type	Attachment	Order number	Approval number (E1 ...)
0+ (up to 13 kg)	Baby Safe Plus	Isofix base frame	1ST019907	04 301146
1 (9-18 kg)	Duo Plus TT	ISOFIX and TOP TETHER	DDA000006	04 301133
2-3 (15-36 kg)	Kidfix XP [a)]	Safety belt and ISOFIX/safety belt [b)]	000019906 %	04 301198
	Kidfix II XP	Safety belt and ISOFIX/safety belt [b)]	000019906L	04 301323

[a)] For optimum protection, especially in the event of a side impact, it is recommended that you use this child seat complete with the backrest.

[b)] Only use the fastening means of the seat belt if the seat is not equipped with the ISOFIX system.

Fasteners for child seats

Use of child seats

Overview of usability of child seats according to standard ECE-R 16:

Child seats that use the ISOFIX System

Group	Size category of child seat [a]	Front passenger's seat		Second row of seats		Third row of seats
		with activated front air bag [b]	with front airbag switched off [b]	outer seats [c]	center seat	
0 (up to 10 kg)	E	X	X	IL	X	X
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E D C	X	X	IL	X	X
1 (9-18 kg)	D C B B1 A	X	X	IL IUF	X	X
2 (15-25 kg)	–	X	X	IL	X	X
3 (22-36 kg)	–	X	X	IL	X	X

[a] The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.

[b] If the passenger seat is equipped with ISOFIX system holding eyelets, it is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval.

[c] The seat is suitable for the ISO/R3 fixing system.

IL The seat is suitable for the ISOFIX child seats with "Semi-Universal" approval.

IUF The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats and is permitted for use in this weight category.

X The seat is not equipped with eyelets for the ISOFIX System.

i-Size

Front passenger's seat		Second row of seats		Third row of seats
with activated front air bag	with front airbag switched off	outer seats	center seat	
X	X	i-U	X	X

i-U The seat is suitable for forward and backward-facing i-Size child seats of the "Universal" category.

X The seat is not suitable for i-Size child seat of the category "Universal".

Child seat fastened with a safety belt

Group	Front passenger's seat		Second row of seats		Third row of seats [a) b)]
	with activated front air bag	with front airbag switched off	outer seats	center seat [a)]	
0 (up to 10 kg)	X	U [c)]	U	U	X
0+ (up to 13 kg)	X	U [c)]	U	U	X
1 (9-18 kg)	UF	U	U	U	X
2 (15-25 kg)	UF	U	U	U	L
3 (22-36 kg)	UF	U	U	U	L

a) It is prohibited to install a child seat with a support leg on the middle seat of the second row and on the seats of the third row.

b) To get to the third row of seats, follow the instructions in this Owner's Manual. When using recommended child seats on the third row of seats, adjust the second row as far forward as possible in a longitudinal direction.

c) Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.

U The seat is suitable for the child seat category ""Universal"" and is permitted for use in this weight group.

UF The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats of the "Universal" category and is permitted for use in this weight group.

L The seat is only suitable for recommended child seats in category 2-3 » *page 50*.

X The seat is not suitable for children in this weight group.

Overview

Follow the instructions and notes at the beginning of this chapter » *page 49, What you should be mindful of*.

ISOFIX

⚠ WARNING

› On the retaining eyelets that are used to install the child seat with the ISOFIXSystem provided, do not attach any other child seats, belts or objects.

ⓘ A child seat that uses the ISOFIX system can only be installed in the vehicle if it is approved for this vehicle type.
Further information can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or from a list of vehicles enclosed with the child seat.

The ISOFIX system allows for the fast and secure installation of the child seat. The eyelets for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX system are located on the outer seats in the second row and possibly on the front passenger seat.



Holding eyes for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX system.

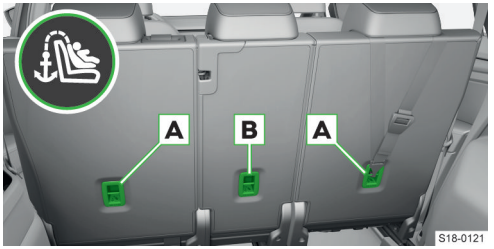
TOP TETHER

⚠ WARNING

› Child seats that use the TOP TETHER system should only be used on those seats that are fitted with holding eyelets bearing the TOP TETHER symbol.

› Only attach one fastening strap on the child seat to the holding eyelet in the TOP TETHER system.
› When attaching the child seat with the TOP TETHER system, no other object must be attached to the TOP TETHER system holding eyelet.

The belt fastened into the TOP TETHER system restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.



Holding eyelets on the rear seats in the second row

The TOP TETHER holding eyelets for attaching the belt are located on the outer rear seats on the second row A, as well as on the middle rear seat B of the second row when necessary.

Airbags

Usage

The airbag system provides, as a supplement to the seat belts, additional occupant protection during severe frontal and side-on collisions.

The best possible protective effect of the airbag is achieved only when the seat belt is also worn. The airbag system is no substitute for the seat belts.

What you should be mindful of

Airbag systems can only properly protect if all occupants have been secured and they are in the correct seating position.

The front passenger airbag should be switched off in some situations » *page 55, Operation*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of serious or fatal injuries!
› Maintain the correct seating position.
› Do not keep your limbs in the deployment area of the airbags.
› No persons, animals or objects such as cup holders or hangers for clothes may be in the deployment area of the airbags » *page 54*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of a functional restriction of the front airbags!
› Do not cover or stick anything over the steering wheel or the dash panel. The front airbags were not able to deploy.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of a functional restriction of the side airbags!
› Do not exert excessive forces, e.g. impacts, on the seat backs.
› Do not use seat covers that have not been approved by ŠKODA.
› Have damaged seat covers at the installation location of the side airbags repaired by a specialist garage.

ⓘ ŠKODA AUTO recommends seat covers from the product range of ŠKODA original accessories.

Functionality

When sinking into the inflated airbag, the forward movement of the body is damped and the risk of injury is reduced.

ⓘ As the airbags inflate, smoke is released. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Airbag deployment in the event of an accident

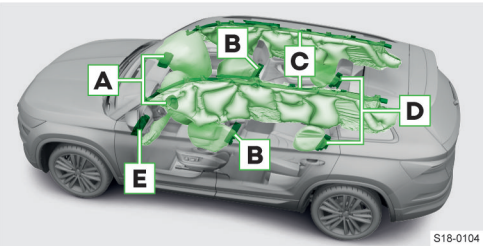
Airbag deployment is influenced by many factors. The deceleration rate at the time of impact is crucial.

In the following situations, **no** airbags are deployed:
› Minor frontal and side collisions
› Rear-end collision
› Vehicle rollover

If the measured deceleration rate is below the reference values programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be deployed despite possible serious vehicle damage.

Airbag overview

The installation location of the airbags is marked with the lettering **AIRBAG**.



A Front airbags
B Side airbags - front
C Head airbags
D Side airbags - rear

E Driver's knee airbag

Operating conditions

✓ The ignition must be switched on for airbag deployment.

Operation

Deactivating the airbags

We recommend having airbags other than the front passenger airbag deactivated » page 55, Operationby a ŠKODA service partner.

Deactivation of the airbags should be considered in cases such as the ones below:

› If the driver's seat adjustment is correct, the distance of at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the sternum cannot be maintained.
› Additional operating controls for a physically disadvantaged driver are installed in the vehicle.
› The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.

illuminates for 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for 12 seconds – Airbag or belt tensioner deactivated with the diagnostic device
Message regarding the deactivated airbag or belt tensioner

⚠ WARNING

If an airbag is deactivated during the sale of the vehicle, inform the buyer!

Troubleshooting

Airbag system faulty

illuminates
Message regarding an airbag fault

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Key switch for the front passenger airbag

Usage

Deactivation of the front passenger airbag is provided for the following cases, for example:

› A rear-facing child seat is mounted on the front passenger seat.
› The minimum distance to the control panel cannot be maintained.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Danger of fault in the passenger airbag deactivation system!

› Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of unexpected deployment of the passenger airbags in an accident!

› After switching off the passenger airbag with the key bit, do not leave the key bit inserted in the key switch while driving. Shocks can cause the Key assignment to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag.

Functionality

Status display for front passenger airbag



Indicator lights in the dash panel

› After switching on the ignition, the two indicator lights light up briefly.
› If the system is OK, both of the indicator lights go out.
› One of the indicator lights then lights up again depending on the position of the key switch:

OFF Illuminates – front passenger airbag switched off

ON Illuminates 65 secs after the ignition is switched on – passenger front airbag switched on

Operation

Before switching off/switching on the front passenger airbag

Depending on the key type:

› Completely fold out the key bit.

Or:

› Remove the key bit.

Switch front passenger front airbag on/off



› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the passenger door.
› Insert the key bit into the slot in the key switch as far as it will go.
› To **Switch off**, carefully rotate the key

switch into the position **OFF**.

› To **Switch on**, carefully rotate the key switch into the position **ON**.

› Remove the key bit from the slot.

› Close the passenger door.

› Turn on the ignition and check that the front passenger airbag indicator lights are lit up.

Troubleshooting

Key switch for airbag deactivation is faulty

ON flashes together with OFF
The front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident!

› Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

Exterior lighting

Functionality

Unless otherwise stated, the light works when the ignition is switched on.

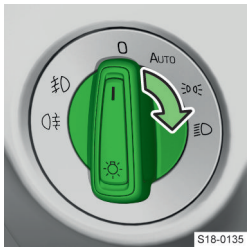
When no light is switched on

The symbol ☼ in the light switch may also light up in the instrument cluster, indicating that it is necessary to switch on the light.

illuminates

› Switch on the light.

Operation



0 Switching off the lights except the daytime running lights

AUTO Switching the low beam on/off automatically » page 58

Switching on the parking lights

Switching on the low beam

As the basic position of the light switch, use position **AUTO**.

Settings

Headlight range control

Applies to headlights without adaptive functions

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > > ☼

Or:

MENU > > > ☼

› Adjust the headlight range using the slider. The headlight range must correspond to the vehicle's load.

0 Front seats occupied, boot empty

2 All seats occupied, boot empty

4 All seats occupied, boot loaded

6 Driver's seat occupied, boot loaded

In the event of another vehicle loading condition, the positions **1**, **3**, **5** can be used.

Headlight range control

Applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

In dynamic cornering light, the headlight range control is adjusted automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

An incorrectly adjusted headlight range can cause insufficient vehicle lighting or can dazzle other road users.

› Adjust the headlight range correctly.

Adjust headlights for driving in right / left-hand traffic

Applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > > ☼

Or:

MENU > > > ☼

› Activate the travel mode function.

Troubleshooting

LED-light defective

or ☼⚠ illuminates

Information appears in the display regarding the defective lights.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

The headlights are misted up on the inside

Inside the headlights, moisture may occur. This is not a defect.

Malfunction of the automatic headlight circuit

› Clean the windscreen in the area of the rain/light sensor.

Beam of light in front of the vehicle has shortened

Headlight defective.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driving lights defective

If a message regarding the failed driving lights is displayed, the light will work in emergency mode.

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Daylight running lights

Functionality

The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of the vehicle.

For vehicles for certain markets, they also illuminate the rear vehicle area.

Operating conditions

✓ The lights switch is in position **0**, **AUTO** or .

Automatic driving lights function

Functionality

Switching low beam on automatically in low-light

The low beam is automatically switched on or off depending on the lighting conditions.

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

The low beam is switched on automatically when the windscreen wipers are switched on.

The automatic headlight circuit is indicated by the illumination of the symbol in the light switch.

Operating conditions

Switching low beam on/off automatically in rain

✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.
✓ The function is activated.
✓ The windscreen wipers are switched on for longer than 30 seconds.

Settings

The automatic driving lights functions are set in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

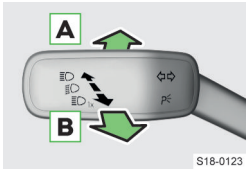
Or:

MENU > > >

High beam and headlight flasher

Operation

The high beam works when the low beam is on.



A Switch on high beam

B Switch off main beam / switch on headlight flasher

When the main beam or headlight flasher is switched on, the indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster .

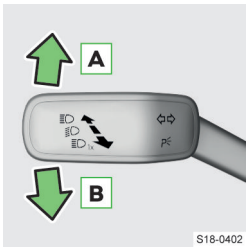
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of an accident!

› Do not dazzle other road users with the high beam.

Turn signal

Operation



A Switching on the turn signal light on the right – a light flashes in the instrument cluster

B Switching on the turn signal light on the left – a light flashes in the instrument cluster

Turn signal - convenience signalling

Convenience signalling enables three flashes of the turn signal lights without having to move the lever up or down.

› Tap the control lever up or down.

The corresponding turn signal lights flash three times.

Tap the lever in the opposite direction ahead of time to stop signalling.

Settings

Activating/deactivating convenience signalling

The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Troubleshooting

Turn signal light defective

flashes faster - turn signal light on the right defective

› Check the turn signal light on the right.

flashes faster - turn signal light on the left defective

› Check the turn signal light on the left.

Trailer flashing light failed

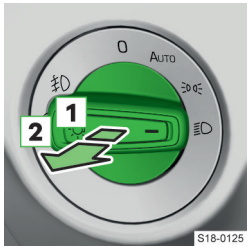
does not flash when the trailer is hitched - trailer turn signal light defective

› Check the trailer lighting.

Fog lights

Operation

Applies to headlights without adaptive functions



1 Switch-on position of the fog lights

› Turn the light switch to position **AUTO**, or .

› Pull the light switch to the initial position.

The warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates .

Bad weather light

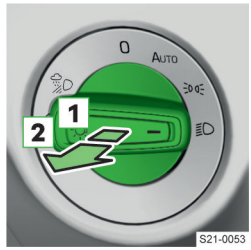
Usage

Applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

The bad weather light represents one of the light modes, provides better illumination of the road in unfavourable visibility conditions where the standard light loses its effectiveness.

Operation

Applies to headlights with adaptive functions.



1 Switch-on position of the bad weather light

› Turn the light switch to position **AUTO**, or .

› Pull the light switch to the initial position.

Depending on the equipment, the indicator light lights up in the instrument cluster or in the light switch.

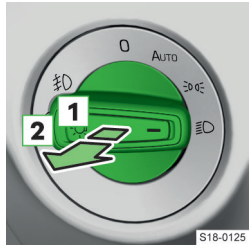
The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The low beam is switched on.

✓ The vehicle speed is max. 120 km/h.

Rear fog light

Operation



2 Switch-on position of the fog tail light

› Turn the light switch to position **AUTO**, or .

› Pull the light switch to the second position.

The warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates .

ⓘ The rear fog light does not illuminate when an accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Hazard warning lights function

Operation

› Press the button to switch on or off in the middle part of the control panel.

The hazard warning lights can be switched on automatically during hard braking. The hazard warning lights are then switched off again automatically when starting off or accelerating.

ⓘ When the hazard warning system is on and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning lights will be switched off temporarily and only the turn signal will flash on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking light function

Usage

Double-sided parking light

The two-sided parking light allows the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the sidelights.

One-sided parking light

The one-sided parking light allows one side of the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the corresponding sidelights.

Operation

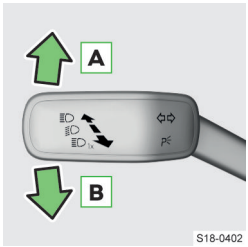
Double-sided parking light

› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn the light switch to position .
› Switch off the ignition.
› Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

The light may switch off automatically if the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low. If the parking lights on both sides are switched on with the ignition off, the lights will not be switched off automatically and the 12 volt vehicle battery may be discharged.

One-sided parking light



A Switch on the sidelights on the right
B Switch on the sidelights on the left

› Switch off the ignition.
› Move the lever to the appropriate position.
› Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

CORNER function

Functionality

The CORNER function is intended for turning or manoeuvring (e.g. when parking).

The function illuminates the vicinity of the vehicle front in the direction of travel.

Operating conditions

✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are steered sharply.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ The fog lights are not switched on.
✓ The driving speed is lower than 40 km/h.

Adaptive functions of the headlights

Usage

Applies to headlights with adaptive functions.

The dynamic cornering lights ensure the best possible illumination of the road, depending on the respective driving situation.

The **Dynamic cornering light** function ensures the best possible illumination of the curve area.

Operating conditions

✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Settings

Activate / deactivate the dynamic cornering lights function

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

› Activate or deactivate the function *Dynamic cornering light* .

Function COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME

Functionality

The COMING HOME function turns on the light after turning off the ignition and opening the driver's door. The light switches off automatically after the set lighting time has elapsed.

The LEAVING HOME function switches on the light when unlocking the vehicle with the wireless remote control.

Operating conditions

✓ Visibility has worsened.
✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Settings

This function is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

High-beam assist system Light Assist

Functionality

The high beam assist system automatically switches the high beam on and off.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

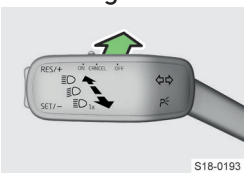
› If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h or 60 km/h (depending on the vehicle equipment).
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

It lights up in the instrument cluster from the isolation box.

Switching off

› Manually switch the high beam on or off.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle other road users if their headlights/lights are not detected for the following reasons, for example:

› The headlights/lights of oncoming vehicles are covered by crash barriers, for example.

› The headlamps/lights of the oncoming or preceding vehicle are dirty or not functioning.

The system function can be restricted in unfavorable weather conditions.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Video - high beam assistant (Light Assist)

Light Assist - Activation and deactivation

http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-kodiaq-auto-light-assist

Headlight Assist System Dynamic Light Assist

Functionality

The headlight assist system automatically switches the high beam on and off.

When the high beam is switched on, it adjusts the light cone so that the drivers of oncoming and preceding vehicles are not dazzled.

The assistant also ensures better illumination of the curve area.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

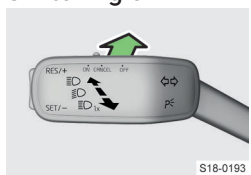
› If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h (for some countries, higher than 60 km/h).
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

It lights up in the instrument cluster from the isolation box.

Switching off

› Manually switch the high beam on or off.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle other road users if their headlights/lights are not detected for the following reasons, for example:

› The headlights/lights of oncoming vehicles are covered by crash barriers, for example.

› The headlamps/lights of the oncoming or preceding vehicle are dirty or not functioning. The system can also recognize a vehicle as a single-lane means of transport.

The system function can be restricted in unfavourable weather conditions.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

The Dynamic Light Assist is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Interior lighting

Operation

Operation of the lighting

- Lighting in front and rear
- REAR Rear lighting
- Reading lamp left
- Reading lamp right
- Automatically switch on and switch off
  When the front light is set to , the rear light is automatically switched on or off.

Switching on automatically

The lighting switches on when one of the following events occurs.

› The vehicle is unlocked
› One of the doors is opened

Automatic switch off

The lighting switches off when one of the following events occurs:

› The vehicle is locked
› The ignition is switched on
› About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed

 If a door remains open and the ignition is switched off, the lights will turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

Automatic switching on/off of the footwell lighting

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

The lighting is also switched on automatically after opening the door (e.g. when getting in or out).

Turn on the lighting for the make-up mirror in the sun visors on the windscreen

› Slide off the cover of the make-up mirror.

Settings

The brightness level of the switching and instrument lighting as well as brightness level of the footwell lighting is set in the Infotainment in the following menu when the low beam or parking light is switched on:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Interior ambient light

Usage

The ambient lighting ensures a comfortable atmosphere in the vehicle interior.

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

The lighting is also switched on automatically after opening the door.

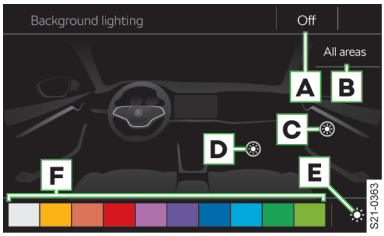
Settings

The background lighting is set in the Infotainment system, in the following menu:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >



A Background lighting modes:
› Automatic – The colour and the brightness will change automatically depending on the selected driving mode.
› Switched off – switching off background lighting
› Manual – the colour and brightness are set manually

With manual mode set:

B Settings for the general brightness level
C Setting the brightness level for the door area

D Setting the brightness level for the footwell

E Selecting the setting for brightness or lighting colour

F Setting for brightness or lighting colour

Windscreen wipers and washers

Operating conditions

- ✓ Engine compartment flap closed
- ✓ Boot lid closed
- ✓ Ignition on

Operation

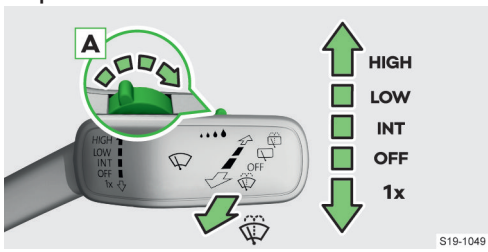
⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

At low temperatures, windscreen washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and restrict visibility.

› Only use the windscreen washer when the windscreen is warm.

Wipe and wash the windscreen



HIGH Fast wiping

LOW Slow wiping

INT Depending upon vehicle equipment:
- › Intermittent wiping
- › Automatic wiping controlled by the rain sensor

OFF Switching off

1x Tip-wiping (spring-loaded position)

A Setting the wiping speed for the position **INT**

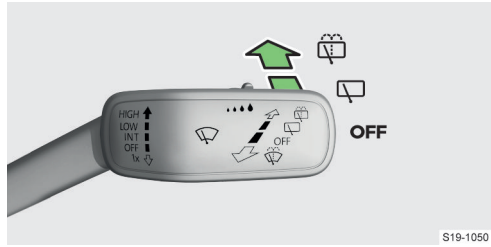
Washing and wiping (spring-loaded position)

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the windscreen washer nozzles of the windscreen can be heated automatically.

Clean headlights

When the headlights are switched on, they are cleaned the first time and after every tenth wash of the windscreen. Setting the spray interval can be carried out by a specialist garage.

Wipe and wash the rear window



Spring-loaded position:
- › Washing and wiping the windscreen
- › Cleaning the rear view camera

Wiping

OFF Switching off

Automatic rear window wiping function

If the windscreen wiping is performed without interruption, then the automatic regular intermittent wiping of the rear window takes place.

When the windscreen wipers are switched on, the rear window is automatically wiped when the reverse gear is engaged.

Settings

Activating/deactivating automatic wiping

The functions for automatic rear window wiping and automatic wiping in the rain are activated or deactivated as follows:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Refilling windscreen washer fluid

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Use windscreen washer fluid that is suitable for the weather conditions.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen washer system!

› When refilling the washer fluid, do not remove the strainer from the neck of the container.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the headlights!

› Only use washer fluid that does not attack polycarbonates.

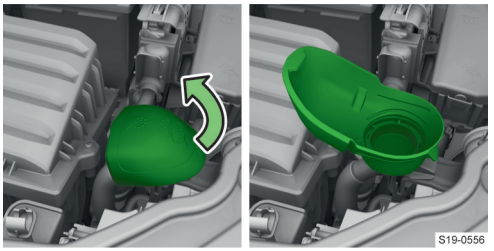
ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to engine compartment components!

› Close the container after refilling the windscreen washer fluid.

The windscreen washer tank is located in the engine compartment » page 16.

The container can hold a volume of 3 litres and 5 litres for vehicles with a headlight cleaning system. For some countries where vehicles have the headlamp cleaning system, the volume is 7 litres.



Funnel-shaped sealing cap of the tank

› Open the engine compartment lid » page 210.
› Gently open the top of the sealing cap.
› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.
› Close the sealing cap of the tank.

Troubleshooting

Windscreen washer fluid level too low

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

Frozen windscreen wipers

› Carefully remove frozen windscreen wipers from the windscreen before switching on the ignition and free them from snow and ice.

Folding down windscreen wiper arms and replacing windscreen wiper blades

For folding down the windscreen wiper from the screen you must first adjust the wiper arms to the folded position.

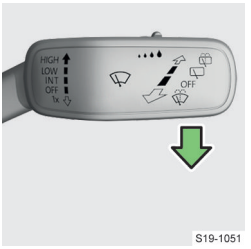
ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the engine compartment flap!

› Close the engine compartment flap before the windscreen wiper arms are folded away from the windscreen.
› Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.

Set the windscreen wiper arms into the folding position

› Switch the ignition on and off again.



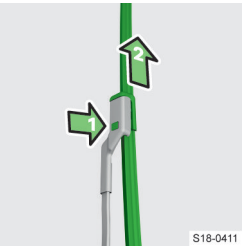
› Within 10 seconds, press the control lever down and hold for about 2 seconds.

Replace the windscreen wiper blade

⚠ CAUTION

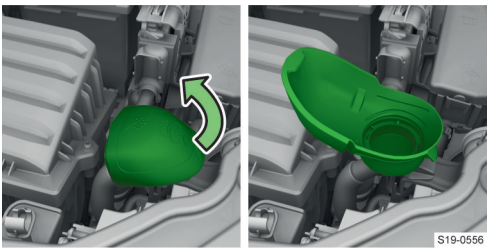
Risk of an accident!

› Change the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.



› Press the catch and remove the wiper blade.
› Insert the new wiper blade until it clicks into place.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and push the control lever down.

Cap for refilling the windscreen washer fluid



Heating and air conditioning system

Manual air conditioning

What you should be mindful of

› We recommend keeping the interior temperature no more than 5 ° C lower than the outdoor temperature.
› We recommend switching the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.
› Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!
› Always keep the fan on.

⚠ WARNING

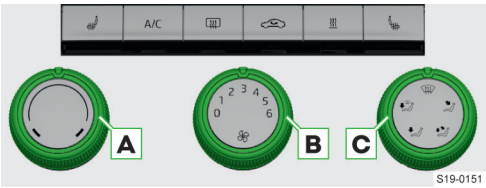
Risk of an accident!
In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.
› Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Operating conditions for the cooling system

✓ Outside temperature above 2 °C
✓ Running engine
✓ Fan switched on

ⓘ The indicator light in the button **A/C** can light up even if not all conditions for switching on the cooling system are met. The cooling system switches on when the conditions for switching on the cooling system are met.

Operation



A Set the temperature
B Set the blower speed
C Set the direction of the air outlet
Switch the seat heating on/off » page 70, Operation
A/C Switch the cooling system on/off
Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 70, Operation
Switch recirculated air mode on/off
Switch auxiliary heating and ventilation on/off » page 67, Usage

Cooling system

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

Automatic activation of the cooling system

Automatic activation of the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up. The system works under the following conditions.

✓ The blower is switched on.
✓ The airflow adjuster is **outside** position.

In this case, the recirculation mode is switched off and cannot be switched on.

Or:

✓ The blower is switched on.
✓ The airflow adjuster is **outside position**.
✓ Recirculation mode is switched on.

Recirculated air mode

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

Briefly switching on recirculation mode can increase the cooling effect.

ⓘ Under certain circumstances, the recirculation mode may be switched on or off automatically.

ⓘ During operation of the air conditioning system, there may be an automatic increase in the engine idle speed.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and set the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic switch-off of the cooling system

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

Climatronic automatic air conditioning system

What you should be mindful of

› We recommend keeping the interior temperature no more than 5 ° C lower than the outdoor temperature.

› We recommend switching the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.

› Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!

› Always keep the fan on.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.

› Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

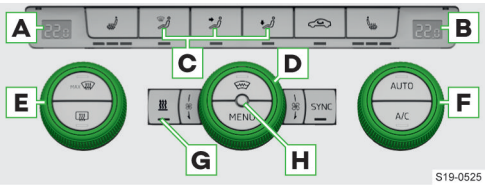
Operating conditions for the cooling system

✓ Outside temperature above 2 °C

✓ Running engine

✓ Fan switched on

Operation



A Set the temperature for the left side

B Set the temperature for the right side

C Set the direction of the air outlet

D Set the blower speed

E Set the temperature for the left side

F Set the temperature for the right side

G Depending on the equipment:

› Switch auxiliary heating and ventilation on/off » page 67, Usage

› **REST** Use of residual engine heat for maintaining heat in the vehicle interior

It is possible to switch on within 30 minutes of switching off the ignition.

Switching off the function takes about 30 minutes.

H Interior temperature sensor

Switch the seat heating or ventilation on/off » page 70, Operation

Switch recirculated air mode on/off

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

MAX Switch the windscreen ventilation/defrosting mode on/off

Switching the rear window heater on/off » page 70, Operation

Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 70, Operation

MENU Operate Climatronic in the Infotainment system

SYNC Switch maintenance of the interior temperature on/off according to the temperature setting for the driver's side

AUTO **Press** - Switch on automatic mode

This function keeps the temperature constant and prevents the windows from misting.

Hold - Maintain the interior temperature in accordance with the temperature setting for the driver side (SYNC function)

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

ⓘ The rear temperature can also be set on the display in the centre console at the rear.

With a temperature setting outside of the number range, one of the following icons will be displayed in the Climatronic display:

LO Maximum cooling power
HI Maximum heating power

ⓘ During operation of the air conditioning system, there may be an automatic increase in the engine idle speed.

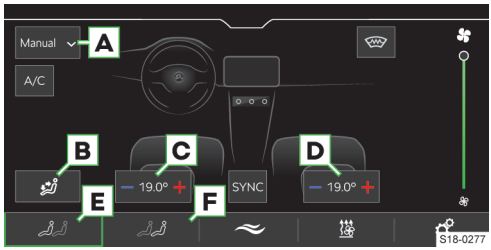
Settings

Display the settings menu

› Tap the **MENU** button on the Climatronic.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > ❄ in the Infotainment screen.



A Select Climatronic mode

B Set the direction of the air outlet in manual mode

C Set the temperature for the left side

D Set the temperature for the right side

E Show the front settings menu

F Show the back settings menu

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off
When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.
Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

Switching the windscreen heater on/off » *page 70, Operation*

According to the selected Climatronic mode:
› Manual mode - Set the blower speed
› Automatic mode - Set the operating power

SYNC Switch maintenance of the interior temperature on/off according to the temperature setting for the driver's side

Air Care
The function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the vehicle interior. At the same time, the air is both circulated and cleaned.
The air purification process is displayed in the Infotainment.
For proper operation, the doors and windows must be closed.
› To turn on/off, tap . *Active* .

Switch auxiliary heating and ventilation on/off » *page 67, Usage*

REAR Lock increases in heat output for the rear seat heater » *page 70, Settings*
The function is displayed after tapping the function surface **F**.

Further Climatronic settings

› To make further settings, press the **MENU** button on the Climatronic >, tap on in the Infotainment screen.

› *Automatic air recirculation* - Automatic air circulation mode on/off

Also included depending on vehicle equipment:

› *Automatic supplementary heater* - Switch fast interior heating on/off

› *Automatic windscreen heating* - Switch on/off the automatic windscreen heating

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

› Switch on automatic mode.

Or:

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and set the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic switch-off of the cooling system

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

Auxiliary heating and ventilation

Usage

The auxiliary heater heats the vehicle interior and the engine.

The auxiliary ventilation makes it possible to supply fresh air to the vehicle interior when the engine is switched off. As a result, the interior temperature is lowered, e.g. when the vehicle is parked in the sun.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ DANGER

Risk of poisoning!

› The auxiliary heater must not be operated in enclosed spaces.

⚠ DANGER

Risk of fire!

› Switch off the auxiliary heater before refuelling.

› The exhaust pipe for the auxiliary heater is located on the underside of the vehicle. Therefore, do not stop the vehicle in places where the exhaust gases could come into contact with easily flammable materials, e.g. dry grass, spilled fuel etc.

Functionality

The system heats or ventilates the vehicle interior depending on the temperature settings of the air conditioning system and the air outlet nozzles before the ignition is switched off.

The system consumes fuel from the fuel tank when operating the heating.

Operating conditions

✓ The charge state of the 12-volt vehicle battery is sufficient.

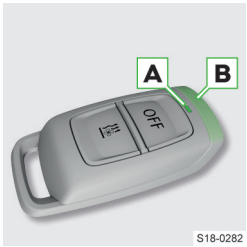
✓ The fuel supply is sufficient, the instrument cluster does not light up .

Operation

Depending on equipment, the vehicle may feature remote control.

Switch on/off with the radio remote control

› Hold down the corresponding key.



A Indicator light

B Antenna

OFF Switching off

Switching on

ⓘ Hold the radio remote control with the antenna facing upwards.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Protect the remote control from moisture, strong vibrations and direct sunlight.

Display of the radio remote control indicator light

› Lit up green for 2 seconds - switch on

› Lit up red for 2 seconds - switch off

Range of the radio remote control

The range of the wireless remote control is a few hundred meters when the battery is full. For example, obstacles or weather conditions can reduce the range.

Switching on/off via the control panel of the air conditioning system

› Press the button.

Set automatic switching on

Show the menu for vehicles with manual air conditioning

The automatic switching on is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR >

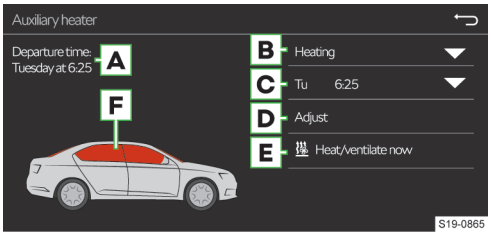
Or:

MENU > >

Show menu for vehicles with Climatronic

› Press the button **MENU** on the Climatronic control panel >, tap in the Infotainment screen.

Settings and information in the Infotainment screen



A Day and time when the vehicle is to be ready for use

B Setting the heating/ventilation

C List of pre-selected times, activation / deactivation of the preset time

D Set the selected choice of time and the duration (10-60 minutes)

E Immediate switch-on

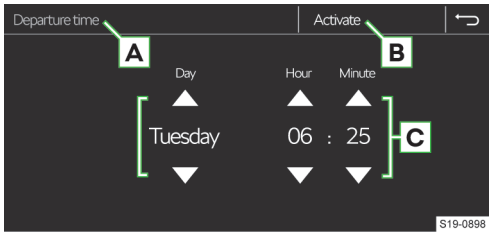
F When the heating is running, the windows are displayed in red

When ventilation is running, the windows are displayed in blue

Set the selected choice of time and the duration

› Select the functional surface for setting the selected preselection time and the running time in the main menu.

The following menu is displayed:



A Currently displayed preset time

B Activation of the currently displayed preset time

C Setting the day and the departure time

When automatic switching on is activated, the warning light in the button lights up after the ignition is turned off.

Only one preset time can be active. The activated preset time will be deactivated again after it has started automatically. To start the next preset time, this preset time must be activated.

When selecting the day in the preset time, there is an option between Sunday and Monday without the specified day. When this position is selected, the system is switched on at the next set time.

Troubleshooting

Smoke in the engine compartment

In the engine compartment, smoke and odours may form during the operation of the auxiliary heater. This is not a defect.

Running the auxiliary heater after stopping the engine

After switching off the system, the coolant pump and the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the heating. This is not a defect.

Indicator light in the radio remote control

- Flashes green in a slow sequence - the switch-on signal was not received
- Flashes red in a slow sequence - the switch-off signal was not received
- Flashes green in an irregular pattern – the parking heater is locked, e.g. because the fuel tank is almost empty or there is an error
- Check the level of fuel.
- If the fuel quantity is OK, seek the help of a specialist company.
- Lights up orange first, then green/red – the battery is weak, the on/off signal has been received
- Lights up orange first, then flashes green/red – the battery is weak, the on/off signal has not been received.
- Flashing orange – the battery is nearly discharged, the on/off signal has not been received
- Not lit up – the battery is discharged, the on/off signal has not been received
- Replace the battery.

Change the battery in the remote control

⚠ WARNING

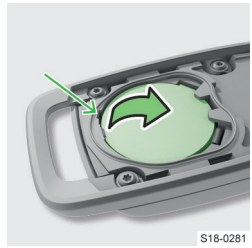
Risk of death!

If the battery is swallowed, serious or even fatal injuries can result from burns in the digestive tract.

- Always keep children away from the radio remote control and batteries.
- If the battery is swallowed, seek medical help immediately.



- Use a thin screwdriver to remove the cover in the marked area.
- Open the cover and push it out.



- Use a screwdriver to loosen the battery in the marked area.
- Replace the battery.
- Insert the cover and push it until it audibly locks into place.

Environment

- The discharged battery does not belong in the household waste.
- Dispose of the discharged battery in an environmentally friendly manner.

Dispose of the charging cable in accordance with all applicable disposal regulations.

Heated windscreen

Usage

Windscreen heating is used for defrosting or ventilating the windscreen.

Requirements

- ✓ Running engine
- ✓ Outside temperature approximately below 35 °C

Operation

Heated rear window

› Using the button on the operating part of the air conditioning.

Heated windscreen

› Tap the button on the Climatronic.

Or:

› Press the key **MENU** on the Climatronic panel > , tap in the Infotainment screen.

Windscreen heating switches off automatically after some time.

If the engine is switched off when the heating is on and turned back on again within about 10 minutes, the heating is continued.

Settings

Automatic heated windscreen

The heated windscreen switches on automatically if the windscreen mists up.

› Press the button **MENU** on the Climatronic control panel >, tap in the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > > in the Infotainment screen.

Troubleshooting

The indicator light in the button or below the button flashes

The heating does not work as the battery charging level of the 12 volt vehicle battery is too low.

Seat heating and ventilation

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of burns!

› Do not switch on the seat heater for persons with limited perception of pain or temperature.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of seat damage!

› Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.

› Do not turn on the heater in the following situations:

  › The seat is not occupied.

  › There are objects on the seat, such as a child seat.

  › There are additional seat covers or protective covers on the seat.

Requirements

✓ Running engine

Operation

Depending on the equipment, the front seats can be heated or heated and ventilated. The outer rear seats can only be heated.

Models without seat ventilation

› Press the or button on the Climatronic to switch on the front seat heating.

› Press the or button in the rear centre console to switch on the rear seat heating.

The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

The output level of the heating is indicated by the number of illuminated indicator lights in the button or in the Infotainment screen.

Models with seat ventilation

› Press the or button on the Climatronic to switch on the front seat heating.

The Infotainment screen displays a menu for operating the front seat heater and ventilation.

› Adjust the heating output/ventilation level.

If the seat heating and ventilation functions are both switched on at the same time, the heating output/ventilation level can only be adjusted in the Infotainment screen.

› Press the or button in the rear centre console to switch on the rear seat heating.

The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

Display heating output/ventilation level in the button

--- Seat heating switched on

--- Seat ventilation switched on

--- Seat heating and ventilation switched on

If the engine is switched off with the heating/ventilation switched on and then started again within approximately 10 minutes, the heating/ventilation will continue according to the setting before the engine was switched off.

Settings

Lock increases in heat output for the rear seat heater

› To turn the function on or off, press the **MENU** button on the Climatronic > > REAR / REAR in the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Tap on MENU > ❄ > > REAR/REAR in the Infotainment screen.

When the function is switched on, the heating output can only be turned down.

ⓘ The function also blocks the possibility of setting the temperature in the display in the rear centre console.

Heated steering wheel

Requirements

✓ Running engine

Operation

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

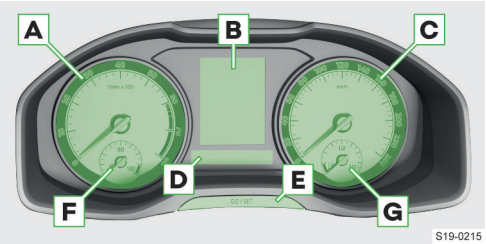
The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

Driver information system

Analogue instrument cluster

Overview

Overview of instrument cluster



- **A** Tachometer with indicator lights
- **B** Display
- **C** Speedometer with indicator lights
- **D** Bar with indicator lights
- **E** Multifunction button:
  - › Setting the time
  - › Reset odometer (trip)
  - › Show distance and days until next service appointment
- **F** Coolant temperature gauge
- **G** Fuel gauge

⚠ NOTICE

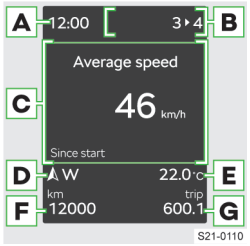
Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never empty the fuel tank completely!**

1 In poor visibility and with dipped headlights off, the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting is reduced to remind the driver to turn on the light.

Display overview

Depending on the equipment, the following information is shown in the display.



- **A** Time
- **B** Selected gear/gear recommendation
  Also included depending on vehicle equipment:
  - › Automatic gearbox selector lever positions
  - › Detected road signs
- **C** Menu, indicator lights and information
- **D** Compass direction display
- **E** Outside temperature
  ❄ - low outside temperature
- **F** Total distance travelled
- **G** Trip - Distance travelled after resetting the memory

Overview of the main menu items on the display

- › Driving data » *page 76, Overview*
- › Assist systems - Activate/deactivate assist systems
- › Navigation - e.g. Display driving recommendations, compass, list of destination
- › Audio - Using radio and media
- › Telephone - Call list, accept or reject an incoming call
- › Vehicle - Vehicle condition » *page 78, Display*.
- › Lap timer - Stopwatch » *page 78, Usage*.

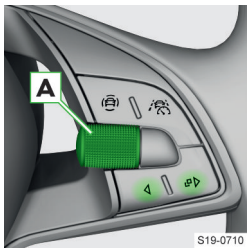
Operation

Operation via the control lever



- **A** **Press** - Switch between menu items/ set values
  Hold - Show main menu
- **B** **Press** - Confirm the menu item

Operation via the multifunction steering wheel



A **Turn** - Switch between menu items/ set values

Press - Confirm the menu item

Press - Return to the menu one level higher

Hold - Show main menu

Press - Show previous menu (if one has been selected) / Show telephone menu

Settings

Setting the language

The language is set in the Infotainment in menu **MENU** > ⚙.

Resetting the odometer

0.0/SET

› Briefly press the button in the instrument cluster.

Setting the time

0.0/SET

› Press and hold the button in the instrument cluster until the menu item *Time* is displayed.

› Release the button, the display shows the hour setting.

› Press the button repeatedly to set the hours.

› Wait 4 seconds, the display shows the minute setting.

› Press the key repeatedly to set the minutes.

› Wait 4 seconds, the display shows the initial setting.

The time is also set in the Infotainment in menu **MENU** > ⚙.

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness of the instrument lighting is adjusted automatically according to the given lighting conditions.

When low beam is switched on, the brightness of the instruments lighting can be adjusted in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > ⚙ > ☼

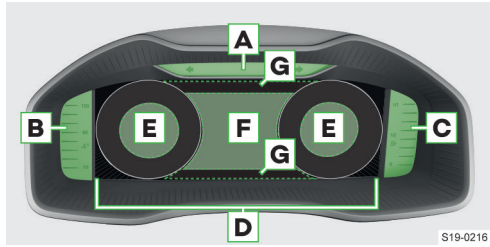
Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > ☼

Digital instrument cluster

Overview

Instrument cluster with 10 "display (virtual cockpit)



A Bar with indicator lights

B Coolant temperature gauge

C Fuel gauge

D Display

E Additional information

F Central display area

G Display area with selected information:

› Gear engaged

› Selector lever positions of the automatic transmission (depending on the vehicle equipment)

› Time

› Warning lights

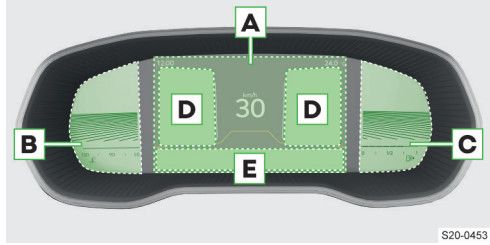
› Information from the assistance systems

› Distance travelled

› Outside temperature

❄ - low outside temperature

Instrument cluster with 8 "display (digital display)



A Display area with selected information:

› Speed

› Time

› Warning lights

› Messages and information

› Outside temperature

❄ - low outside temperature

B Display area with selected information:
- Coolant temperature gauge
- Warning lights

C Display area with selected information:
- Fuel gauge
- Warning lights

D Display area with selected information:

E Display area with selected information:
- Gear engaged
- Selector lever positions of the automatic transmission (depending on the vehicle equipment)
- Warning lights
- Information from the assistance systems
- Total distance travelled
- Range

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never empty the fuel tank completely!**

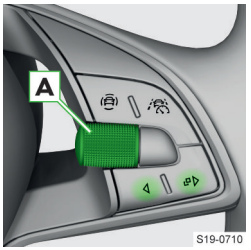
In poor visibility and with dipped headlights off, the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting is reduced to remind the driver to turn on the light.

Overview of the main menu items

- Driving data *» page 76, Overview*
- Assist systems - Activate/deactivate assist systems
- Navigation - e.g. Display driving recommendations, compass, list of destination
- Audio - Using radio and media
- Telephone - Call list, accept or reject an incoming call
- Vehicle - Vehicle condition *» page 78, Display*.
- Lap timer - Stopwatch *» page 78, Usage*.

Operation

Applies to the instrument cluster with 10 "display (virtual cockpit)



A **Rotate** - Switch between menu items/Set values/Manually change map scale

Press - Confirm the menu item

Turn and press - Activate automatic map scale changing

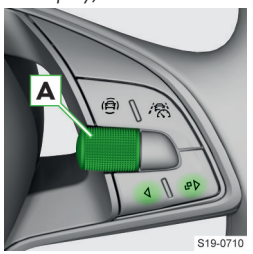
◁ **Press** - Return to the menu one level higher

Hold - Show main menu

▷ **Press** - Change the variant of the display

Hold - Display the menu of preset options with additional information

Applies to the instrument cluster with 8 "display (digital display)



A **Turn** - Switch between menu items/set values

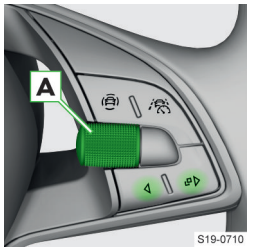
Press - Confirm the menu item

◁ Set the variant of the display

▷ Set the variant of the display

Show menu and select additional information in the display

Applies to the instrument cluster with 8 "display (digital display)



- To display the menu on the right side of the display, press the control wheel **A**.
- To display the menu on the left side of the display, use the control dial **A**. **twice** Press (the second press must not select the Settings menu item).
- To switch between information, turn the control wheel **A**.
- To confirm the information selection, turn the control wheel **A**.

Certain information has a sub-menu.

- To display the sub-menu, press the ▷ or ◁ button.
- To switch between menu items on the submenu, turn the control wheel **A**.

Settings

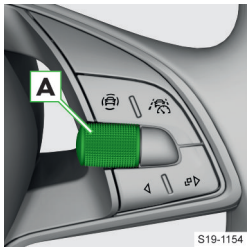
Setting the language

The language is set in the Infotainment in menu **MENU** > ⚙.

Resetting the odometer in the instrument cluster

Applies to the instrument cluster with 10 "display (virtual cockpit)

- Select *Trip* in the menu in instrument cluster display.



A **Turn** - Select information
Press - Confirm information
Hold - Reset counter

Setting the time

The time is set in the Infotainment in menu **MENU** > .

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness is adjusted automatically according to the given lighting conditions.

The brightness is adjusted with the dipped beam switched on in the infotainment in the following menu:

CAR > >

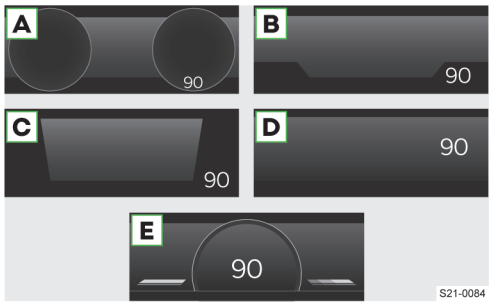
Or:

MENU > > >

Select and set the variant of the display

Applies to the instrument cluster with 10 "display (virtual cockpit)

- Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel to change the variant of the display presentation.
- Press the button on the multi-function steering wheel to turn on the steering wheel heating.
- Select and confirm the menu item for the display variants.
- Select one of the following variants of the display and confirm.

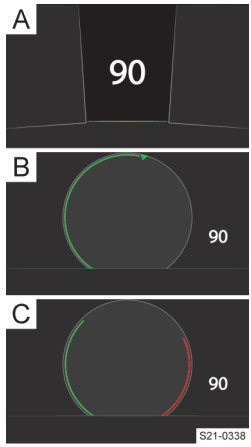


A Classic display
B Advanced display
C Modern display
D Basic display
E Sporty display (depending on equipment)

Select and set the variant of the display

Applies to the instrument cluster with 8 "display (digital display)

- Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Select one of the following variants of the display and confirm.



A Digital display
B Speed indicator
C Sports display (tachometer)

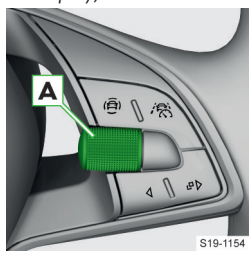
Choose display of additional information

Applies to the instrument cluster with 10 "display (virtual cockpit)

- Press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Select and confirm one of the following prefix options (the scope of the prefix options depends on the type of Infotainment):
  - **Auto** - Information depending on the selected driving mode.
  - **Classic** - Information about the selected gear and the current speed.
  - Adjustable pre-selection options.

Show menu with selected information in the display

Applies to the instrument cluster with 8 "display (digital display)



- To display the menu on the right side of the display, press the control wheel **A**.
- To display the menu on the left side of the display, use the control dial **A** **twice** Press (the second press must not select the Settings menu item).

› To switch between information, turn the control wheel A.

› To confirm the information selection, turn the control wheel A.

Setting the pre-selection option for the display of additional information

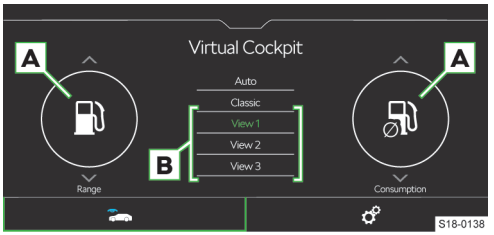
Applies to the instrument cluster with 10 "display (virtual cockpit)

The pre-selection option for displaying additional information is set in the Infotainment system in the following menu:

CAR > > Menu item for the virtual cockpit

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for the virtual cockpit



› Select the desired additional information in the A areas.

› The desired function area for the preselection option in the area B hold to save the selection (the scope of the preset options depends on the type of Infotainment).

Driving data

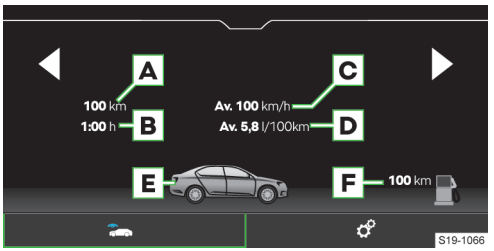
Overview

The driving data display works with the ignition switched on.

In the instrument cluster display

Depending on the equipment, the display of the instrument cluster shows information such as speed, fuel consumption, range, etc.

In Infotainment



A Distance travelled

B Driving time

C Average speed

D Average fuel consumption

E Graphic display of fuel levels

Graphical fuel gauge - If the expected range is less than 300 km, the vehicle slowly approaches the symbol

F Range

Memory

The system saves the driving data in the following memories:

Since start

› Driving data from the time of switching on the ignition until the ignition is switched off again is stored in the memory. If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory will be reset.

Long-term

› The driving data of all trips up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9999 km driving distance is stored in the memory. If one of the listed values is exceeded, the memory is reset.

Since refuel

› Driving data from the time the fuel tank was last filled is stored in the memory. The memory is reset the next time the tank is filled.

Operation

Display driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the operating lever

› Select the menu item for the driving data in the main menu in the instrument cluster display.



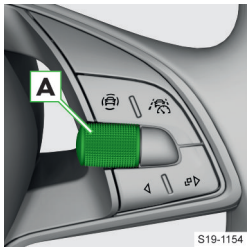
A **Press**: Select information/Set values

B **Press**: Confirm information

Display driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multi-functional steering wheel

Applies to the instrument cluster with 10"display (virtual cockpit)

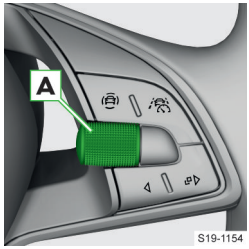
› Select the menu item for the driving data in the main menu in the instrument cluster display.



A **Turn**: Select information/Set values
Press: Confirm information

Display driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multi-functional steering wheel

Applies to the instrument cluster with 8"display (digital display)



- To show the driving data on the right side of the display or in the middle of the display, press the adjusting wheel A and select the menu item for driving data.
- To display the driving data on the left side of the display, press the dial A **twice** and select the menu item for driving data.
- To switch between information, turn the control wheel A.
- To confirm the information selection, turn the control wheel A.

Displaying driving data in the infotainment system

The driving data is displayed in the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > > Menu item for driving data

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for the driving data

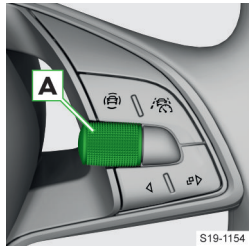
Select and reset the memory for driving data in the display of the instrument cluster using the control lever



- To **select** the memory for the displayed driving data, press button A repeatedly.
- To **reset** the memory, press and hold button A.

Select memory for driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multifunction steering wheel and reset it

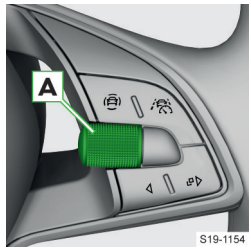
Applies to the instrument cluster with 10"display (virtual cockpit)



- To **select** the memory for the displayed driving data, press control wheel A repeatedly.
- To **reset**the memory, hold the dial A.

Select memory for driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multifunction steering wheel and reset it

Applies to the instrument cluster with 8"display (digital display)



- To **select** and **reset** the memory for driving data from the menu on the left side of the display, press the dial A repeatedly.
- To display the menu items on the sub-menu, press the ◁ button.
- To **select** and **reset** the memory for driving data from the menu on the right side of the display and in the middle of the display, press the dial A.
- To display the menu items on the sub-menu, press the ▷ button.
- To **confirm** the menu item selection, press the dial A.

Selecting the memory in the infotainment system

To select the memory, use the functional areas ◀ ▶ in the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > > Menu item for driving data

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for the driving data

Resetting the memory in the infotainment system

The memory is reset in the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Settings

Select driving data to be displayed

The driving data to be displayed is selected in the following Infotainment menu:

CAR > > >

Or:

MENU > > > >

Setting units

The units are set in the following infotainment menu:

CAR > > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Speed limit warning

Usage

Adjustable speed limit

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an acoustic warning signal will sound and the following warning message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Preset speed limit 80 km / h and 120 km / h

Only applies to some countries due to the country-specific legal regulations.

The system automatically indicates a speed limit of 80 km/h and 120 km/h.

If the speed exceeds 80 km/h, an audible warning signal will sound and the symbol will appear in the display.

The audible warning sounds at regular intervals of one minute until the speed is reduced.

If the speed exceeds 120 km/h, an audible warning signal will sound and the symbol will appear in the display.

Settings

Setting the speed limit

› Select *Warning at* or (depending on the display type) and confirm.

› **When the vehicle is stationary**, set the desired speed limit and confirm.

› **While driving**, drive at the desired speed and confirm it as the speed limit.

Resetting the speed limit

› Select *Warning at* or (depending on the display type) and confirm.

› To reset the speed limit, confirm the stored value.

If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the set limit is deactivated, but the set value remains stored.

Vehicle status

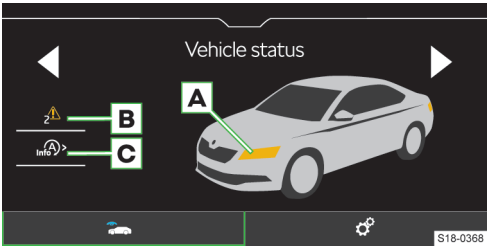
Display

The vehicle status is displayed in the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > > Menu item for the vehicle status

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for the vehicle status



A Vehicle areas displayed in colour indicate associated warnings

B ✓ No notification

⚠ Warning messages regarding the vehicle condition and their quantity

C Display of information about the condition of START-STOP system

› / Activation/deactivation of information regarding the messages of START-STOP system in another screen display

Functionality

In the event of a system fault, messages regarding the fault in question are displayed on the instrument cluster display when the ignition is switched on.

Messages in relation to faults can also be displayed in the Infotainment.

The warning messages will continue to be displayed until the malfunctions have been remedied. After the first display of the message, only the indicator lights ⚠ (Hazard) or ⚠ (Warning) are displayed.

Stopwatch in the instrument cluster

Usage

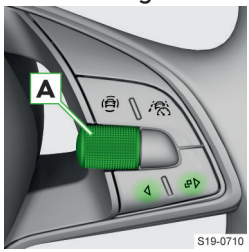
The function Laptimer offers the possibility to use up to 11 lap times, e.g. when driving on a race track, to

measure and display in the display of the instrument cluster.

Operation

› Select *Lap timer* in the main menu in the instrument cluster display.

Displaying functions via the multifunction steering wheel



A **Rotate** - Select information/Set values
Press - Confirm information

Displaying functions via the control lever



A **Press** - Select information/Set values
B **Press** - Confirm information

Overview of functions

› **Start time** - start the timing manually / continue the interrupted measurement
› **Since start** - Start the timer automatically upon start-up
› **Statistics** - Evaluate and reset the measured times
  › Fastest - the fastest lap
  › Slowest - the slowest lap
  › Average - the average lap time
  › Overall time - the total of all the lap times
  › Reset - reset all measured times
› **New lap** - Start measurement of the next lap time
› **Split time** - show the split time
› **Stop** - interrupt the time measurement
  › Continue - Continue measurement of the current lap time
  › New lap - Start measurement of the next lap time
  › Abort lap - cancel the time without saving the measured time
  › Exit - cancel the time and save the measured time

Personalization

Usage

The personalization feature allows each vehicle key to be assigned a user account.

In the user account, settings can be assigned regarding e.g. light function, driver's seat and exterior mirror position, assistance systems, radio, navigation, etc.

Functionality

After opening the driver's door, all the personalised functions are adjusted according to the user account that is assigned to the key which was used to unlock the vehicle.

There are three user accounts and a guest account.

A change to the set personalised functions is automatically stored in the active user account.

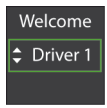
Change user account

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Carry out the account change while the vehicle is stationary.

In the instrument cluster display



› Switching to a different user account is in the instrument cluster display within 10 seconds after turning on the ignition.

In Infotainment

› The system settings are made in the Infotainment in the following menu:

CAR > > *Vehicle status* >

Or:

MENU > > > *Vehicle status* >

ⓘ The account changes e.g. when changing drivers while traveling. This avoids unwanted re-setting of the personalized functions in the active user account.

Settings

This function is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

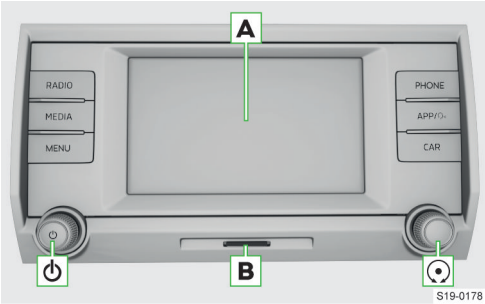
MENU > > >

› Key assignment: Key assignment - Options for assigning the recognised key to the active user account
  › Manual - the key must be manually assigned to the active account.
  › Automatic - detected key automatically assigned to a different account of the active account.
› **Assign the key to the current user account** - Manual assignment of the key to the active account

🛈 To maintain the assignment of the selected user account to the selected key, we recommend that you select the manual key assignment.

Infotainment Swing

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

B SD card slot

Control dial left
- **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
- **Turn:** Set volume

Control dial right
- **Press:** Confirm menu item
- **Turn:** select menu item/set value

RADIO **Radio** menu

MEDIA **Media** menu

MENU Overview of Infotainment menus

PHONE **Phone** menu

APP/ **SmartLink** menu
- **Press:** Display menu
- **Hold:** Switch voice control of the SmartLink application on / off

CAR Information about vehicle settings

System

Cybernetic security

Updates and system support

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, keeps the systems in your vehicle up to date and provides you with full support in terms of the legal regulations for cybersecurity.

Restriction

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

When the ignition is switched off, some infotainment functions, e.g. driving data will not be available.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions

The following Infotainment functions are set in the menu **SETUP**:

- Time and date
- Language
- Units
- Restore factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment sound is set in the menu **SETUP** > *Sound*.

The following menu items can be set:

- Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on
- Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions
- Setting the equalizer
- Adjusting the volume ratio

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set

- Setting the sound system
- Setting the sound space optimisation for the driver
- Turn on/off and adjust the subwoofer volume

Configuration wizard

The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if, after switching on the Infotainment system, there are at least two menu items that have not been set or if a new user account has been selected.

- To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration wizard is displayed tap *Don't show again* .
- For **manual display** tap **SETUP** > *Configuration wizard* .

Safely disconnect the connected USB device

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected device!

To safely disconnect/remove the device, proceed as follows:

› **SETUP** > *Remove safely* .

› Select the desired device.

› Disconnect/remove the device.

If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding

If the infotainment does not respond, restart it as follows:

› Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.

› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend you have the system updated by a specialist garage..

The system update ensures that the Infotainment functions optimally.

Determine system version

› **SETUP** > *System information* .

Manual update

For information on available updates, please refer to the ŠKODA internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

› Visit available updates.

› Save the update to a USB source.

› Insert the USB source into the front USB input.

› **SETUP** > *System information* > *Update software* .

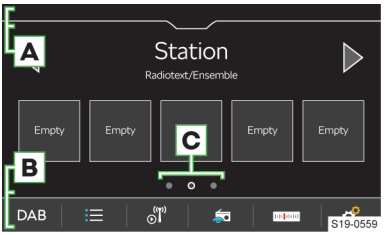
› Select the connected USB device as the update source.

› Go to the update file and confirm the update.

› Confirm any messages and wait for the update process to be completed.

Screen

Overview



A Status bar

B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu

C Other pages of the menu

Operation

NOTICE

Danger of screen damage!

› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu **SETUP** > *Screen*:

› Brightness level of the screen

› Switch off the screen

› Display the time

› Confirmation sounds and animations

Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

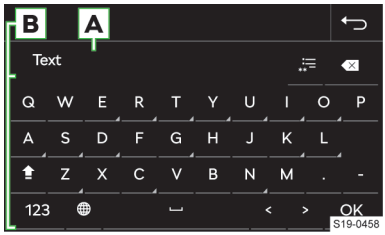
Keyboard types:

› Alphanumeric

› Numeric

› Keyboard for input

› Keyboard for search

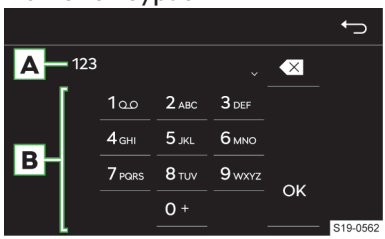


Keypad example

A Input line
- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters in sequence
- Show list of searched entries

B Keypad functional surfaces
- Change to lowercase
- Switch to the first capital letter, followed by lowercase letters
- ABC/ÄBB Switch to the language keypad
- 123 Switch to the numeric and character keypad
- Show additional keypad languages
- Insert a space
- **Hold:** Show additional character variants
- < Move cursor to the left
- > Move cursor to the right
- OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

› OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

If context-sensitive, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a functional surface with a digit.

Operation

The infotainment keyboard is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keyboard will be **displayed automatically**when the infotainment prompts for characters.

Search

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap .

Show additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› Tap or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

› Press and hold the character with the symbol.

› Select the desired symbol.

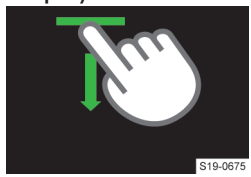
Setting up additional keyboard languages

› **SETUP** > *Additional keyboard languages* .

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

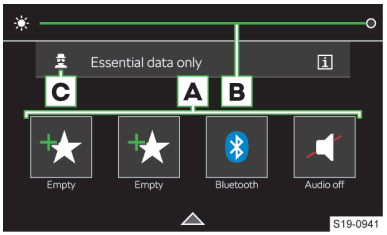
› Tap on .

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



A Preferred functions

B Setting the instrument and key illumination

C Setting the personal data protection level

Settings

› To **display** the edit mode, tap on the empty functional surface with the ★ icon or hold down the occupied functional surface.

› To **add** the preferred feature, tap on the functional surface of the desired function.

› To **remove** the preferred feature, tap on 🗑.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ✕.

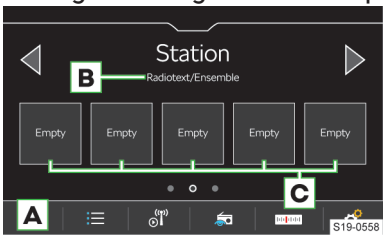
Radio

Overview

Display menu

› Tap on **RADIO**.

Analogue and digital radio reception



A Select frequency range

B Depending on the frequency range
FM: Radio text
DAB: Name of the station group

C Preset buttons for preferred stations

List of available stations

Preset buttons for preferred stations

Display information about the station (applies to DAB)

Manual station search

Settings

Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

List of available stations

› To **display**, tap ☰.

Played station

★ Station stored on the presets

TP A traffic radio station is set

The DAB signal is not available

The DAB station reception is not stable

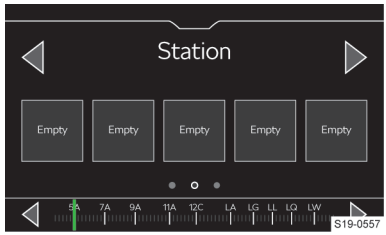
Filtering the stations in the list according to the programme type.
To filter the FM stations, the RDS- and AF function must be switched on.
To filter the DAB stations, the alphabetical sorting function of the stations must be activated.

Manual update of the station list

In the FM station list, information about the program type and the type of the regional station can be displayed.

Operation

Select station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic play** press ⚙ > *Scan* or the right rotary control ⊙.

› To **end automatic play** press SCAN or the right rotary control ⊙.

Find stations manually

› In the Radio main menu, tap MENU.

› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Or:

› Turn the right rotary control ⊙.

Limitation

› Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
› Parking garages, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
› In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the windows with foils or metal-coated stickers can impair the reception of the radio signal.

› The ŠKODA AUTO company does not assume any responsibility for the availability, correct function or broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
› Tap the desired preset button.

Deleting favourites

› In the **Radio** menu, > tap *Clear memory*.
› To delete **a** station button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** presets for preferred stations, tap *All* and confirm the deletion.

Function surfaces ◁ ▷

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** menu is set as follows:

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Arrow buttons:*.
› Choose the change variant.

Switch on/switch off traffic reception (TP) for FM stations

Applies to the FM frequency range.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Traffic program (TP)* .

Switch on/switch off traffic reception for DAB station

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

› In the **Radio** menu switch on the menu item > *Traffic program (TP)* switch on
› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Tap DAB traffic announcements* on / off

Assign station logo from an external source

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option to assign logos from the pictures on an external source to the station buttons.

For station logos, images in jpg, png format with a maximum resolution of 400x240 pixels can be used.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Station logos* .
› Tap the desired preset button.
› Select the external source with the logo.
› Find the desired logo and confirm.

Delete station logos

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Station logos*.
› To delete **a logo**, tap the desired preset button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** logos, tap on *All* and confirm the deletion.

Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and station presets are displayed, detailed information about the broadcast content of the FM station being listened to, or the name of the station group for the DAB station, is displayed.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Radio text* .

Switching automatic frequency change (AF) on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, the infotainment system automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic frequency change (AF)*.

Sort stations in the list of available stations

Applies to the FM frequency range.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Sort list of stations:*.
› Select the sorting of stations in alphabetical order or by group.

Automatic change of frequency to a regionally linked FM station

Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of automatically switching to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss of the FM station being listened to.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *RDS Regional:* .
› Select one of the following menu items:

› *Fix* - When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
› *Automatic* - automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

If reception is lost in the given region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Switch RDS on / off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Radio Radio Data System (RDS)* .

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available:

› Traffic programme (TP)
› Radio text
› RDS Regional
› Automatic frequency change (AF)

Switching additional announcements of DAB stations on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. Weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Additional DAB announcements*.

Enable/disable automatic programme tracking of a DAB station

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same station with a better signal in a different DAB station group.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *DAB - DAB program tracking* .

Turn on/turn off automatic switching from a DAB station to the same FM station

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station being listened to is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same FM station. The symbol (FM) is displayed after the station name.

When the corresponding DAB station can be received again, the station automatically changes from FM to DAB.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Automatic change DAB - FM* .

Switching the Slideshow function on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *DAB slideshow*.

Media

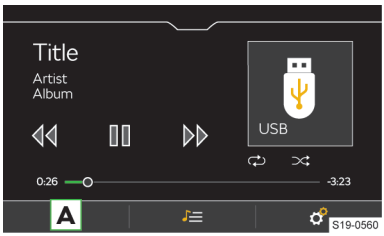
What you should be mindful of

› Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
› When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
› When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
› The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

Display menu

› Tap **MEDIA**.



A Select source
Manage files / multimedia database
Settings

Operation

Operation - Basics



A Album image / symbol of the connected source

▷ **Tap:** start playback

▯▯ **Tap:** pause

◁◁ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song

◁◁ **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap:** to play the current title from the beginning

◁◁ **Hold:** fast rewind within the title

▷▷ **Tap:** play the next song

▷▷ **Hold:** fast forward within the title

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder

Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Turn title playback including subfolders on/off

› In the **Media** menu ⚙ > *Mix/Repeat including subfolders* .

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu ⚙ > and tap on *Traffic program (TP)* .

Safely disconnect the connected device

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected device!
To safely disconnect/remove the device, proceed as follows:

› In the **Media** menu tap on ⚙ > *Remove safely:* .

› Select the desired device.

› Disconnect/remove the device.

ⓘ If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Bluetooth® player

Infotainment allows audio files of a connected Bluetooth® player to play using the A2DP and AVRCP audio profile.

With Infotainment, multiple devices can be paired using Bluetooth®, but only one of them can be used as a Bluetooth® player.

› For **connecting the Bluetooth® player**, pair and connect the device via Bluetooth®.

› In the **Media** menu tap on ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices* .

› In the list, choose the device with the symbol ♫.

ⓘ If a device is connected to Infotainment using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, then it cannot be connected using Bluetooth®.

SD card

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damaging the SD card reader!

› Do not use SD cards with a broken slide for write protection.

› To **insert** the SD card, with the bevelled corner to the right, push into the slot in the external module until it snaps into place.

› To **remove**, first disconnect the SD card safely. For this in the menu **media** ⚙ > tap on *Remove safely:* and select the SD card.

› Press on the inserted SD memory card.

The SD card moves to the eject position.

ⓘ NOTICE

When using an SD card with an adapter, vehicle vibrations might cause the card to fall out of the adapter.

USB device

› To **connect**, insert the USB device into the appropriate port.

To play audio files, use USB ports that support data transfer.

› To **disconnect** disconnect the USB device first. In the **Media** menu, ⚙ > *Remove safely:* tap and select the USB device to do this.

› Disconnect the USB device.

ⓘ A USB device can be connected directly to the USB port or via a connection cable.
We recommend using connecting cable from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.
USB extension cables or reducers may affect the playback function of the connected device.

Load USB audio source

After connecting the USB device, charging will start automatically when the following conditions are met:

✓ The ignition is switched on.

✓ The USB device allows charging.

The charging efficiency can be different compared to the charging from the usual mains power supply.

Depending on the type of the connected USB device and the frequency of use, the charging current may not be sufficient to charge the battery of the connected device.

Some connected audio sources may not be recognised and cannot be charged.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
Map	SD card reader	Standard size	SD SDHC SDXC	FAT16 FAT32 exFAT
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x, 3.x or higher with USB USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that support the USB Mass Storage protocol	
		MTP	Devices having an Android operating system, which support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with an iOS operating system	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.5)	-

The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured audio sources are not supported by Infotainment.
Viewing images on the Infotainment screen is not supported by connected Apple devices.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	

Codec type	File extension
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	wma
9.2	
10	

Files that are protected by DRM and iTunes® technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

Mobile device management

Overview

Mobile device management

› In the **Telephone** > menu *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices* .

In the list of paired mobile devices, the following symbols may appear for the individual devices:

- **White icon** – the device can be connected as a telephone.
  Green icon – the device is connected as a telephone.
- **White icon** – the device can be connected as a Bluetooth® player.
  Green icon - the device is connected as a Bluetooth® player.

Possible functions of the connected mobile device

The functions of a device connected via **HFP**-Bluetooth® profile depends on the following connection types:

First device Main phone	Second device Additional phone
incoming / outgoing calls Telephone contacts Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth® player

Only **a mobile device** can be connected to Infotainment as a Bluetooth® player.

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Connection restrictions

› With Infotainment, a max. of 20 mobile devices are paired.

› The range of the connection of the mobile device to Infotainment is limited to the passenger compartment.

› After reaching the maximum number, the pairing of the next mobile device will replace that of the device that has not been used for the longest period of time.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee full Bluetooth® compatibility with infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version and the implementation of the Bluetooth® protocols on the part of the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices

Applications can be installed in external devices making it possible to display additional information on the Infotainment screen or to operate Infotainment.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work in all external devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper function.

The range of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the Infotainment model, vehicle and region.

Information about ŠKODAapplications

Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link:

http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment

› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› The infotainment Bluetooth® **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth* switch on
› Bluetooth® visibility of the infotainment **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:* > *Visible* switch on
› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found by tapping on **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Name:* .

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

The mobile device is connected to the Infotainment or just paired, depending on the number of devices that are already connected.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device

› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› The infotainment Bluetooth® **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth* switch on
› **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Search devices* .
› Ensure the visibility of the device to be connected.
› Select the desired device from the list of Bluetooth® devices.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a mobile device that is already paired

The connection with an already paired mobile device is made automatically after switching on the ignition; if necessary the device can be connected manually as follows:

› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› The infotainment Bluetooth® **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth* switch on
› **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices* .
› In the device list, select the desired device and the Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Disconnect from a mobile device

› **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices* .
› Tap on the Bluetooth® profile icon of the desired mobile device.

Delete a paired mobile device

› **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices* .
› To **delete a** mobile device, tap 🗑 and confirm the deletion.
› To **delete all** mobile devices, tap *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

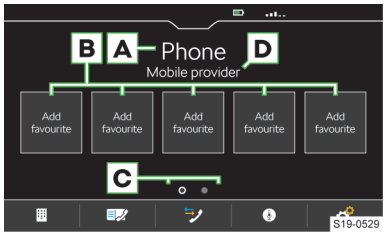
Telephone

Phone menu

Display menu

› Tap on **PHONE**.

If the menu **phone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.



A Name of the connected telephone
› **Tap:** Show list of previously connected phones

B Preset buttons for preferred contacts

C Choice of storage group for the preferred contacts

D Name of telephone service providers
› If the symbol ▷ is displayed in front of the name, roaming is active.

Enter telephone number

Contact list

Call lists

Switch on voice control for the connected telephone

Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

  The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.
- ✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

  The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:*> *Visible*.
- ✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.
- ✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.
- ✓ No mobile device is connected to the Infotainment using Apple CarPlay®.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on .

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **phone** menu, tap on .

› To **search** within the list, tap on *Find* .

› Enter the details you wish to find.

› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

End connection / reject incoming call / end call

Answer an incoming call / return to the held call

Switch the ringer off / on

Hold a call

Switch the microphone off / on

Show details of the caller

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the telephone**, go to **telephone** in the menu and tap on > *speakerphone* .

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap .

Settings for Infotainment telephone functions

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts

› To **save** the desired preset button, press and hold.

› Select a contact from the displayed list.

› If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.

› To **Clear** in the **telephone** menu tap > *User profile* >*Manage favourites* .

› To delete **one** preset, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** station buttons, tap *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Import telephone contacts
After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 2000 telephone contacts. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts
When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** > menu *User profile* > *tap on Import contacts* .

Sort contacts in the phone book
› In the **Telephone** >menu *User profile* > *Sort by:* .

› Select the type by which to sort.

Ringtone
Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› For **setting the Infotainment ringtone** in the **phone** >menu *User profile* > *select the ringtone* .

› Select the ringtone.

Simultaneous calls
This applies to some countries.

Depending on the connected telephone, it is possible to answer the next incoming call and hold the previous call.

› To **switch on/off** simultaneous calls, tap on **telephone** > *Simultaneous calls* .

SmartLink

Functionality
SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

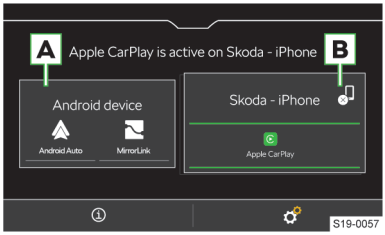
Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable.

Supported connection types
SmartLink supports the following connection types:

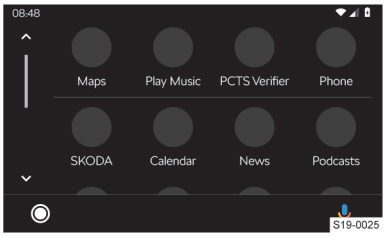
› Android Auto
› Apple CarPlay
› MirrorLink

Overview of the SmartLinkconnection

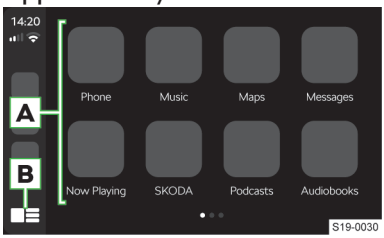
Menu SmartLink
› Tap on APP/.



A Previously connected device
B Currently connected device
ⓘ Display of information about SmartLink
Separation of the active connection
Settings for the SmartLink menu

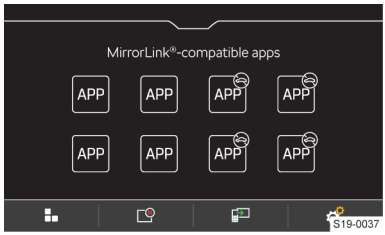
Android Auto


◉ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
Switch on voice control (Google Assistant)

Apple CarPlay


A List of available applications
B Depending on the duration of operation:
› **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay menu
› **Hold:** Switch on Siri voice control

MirrorLink



- It is not possible to operate the application while driving
- Return to the SmartLink menu
- List of running applications
- Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices
- Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

- ✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.
- ✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the respective market.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the Android Autoconnection.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc.
- ✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.
- ✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time with the vehicle stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the Apple CarPlayconnection.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc.
- ✓ Siri voice control is on.
- ✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the MirrorLink connection.

  A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.
- ✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

- < Move the functional areas to the left edge of the screen
- > Move the functional areas to the right edge of the screen
- ∧ Move the functional areas to the top of the screen
- ∨ Move the functional areas to the bottom of the screen
- Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an Android Auto connection

- › For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.
- › By connecting the device, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected and the device will automatically be connected as the main telephone.
- › For the duration of the connection, no other Bluetooth® devices can be connected to the Infotainment system.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an Apple CarPlay connection

- › For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.
- › Connecting the device disconnects all currently connected Bluetooth® devices.
- › For the duration of the connection, no Bluetooth® devices can be connected to the Infotainment system.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an MirrorLink connection

› For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.

› By connecting the device, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected and the device will automatically be connected as the main telephone.

Depending on the device to be connected, a connection confirmation may be required.

Settings

Apple CarPlay – Connection using USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Switch on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .

› Select the connection using Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Disconnection

› In the Apple CarPlay menu, tap the “SKODA” function button.

› Tap on ⊗.

Android Auto – Connection using USB

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Switch on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .

› Select the connection using Android Auto.

Android Auto – Disconnection

› In the Android Auto menu, ⚙ > tap “SKODA”.

› Tap on ⊗.

MirrorLink – Connection using USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Switch on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .

› Select the connection using MirrorLink.

MirrorLink – Disconnection

› In the MirrorLink menu, tap ▪▪.

› Tap on ⊗.

Change to another device / connection type

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

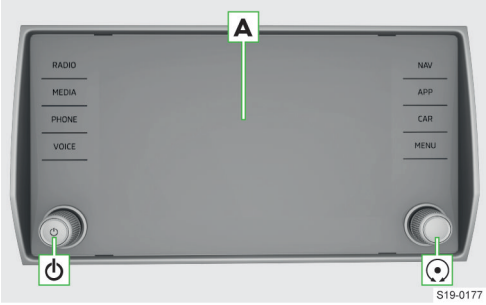
› Tap on **APP/**.

› Select the desired device or connection type.

Infotainment Bolero

Infotainment overview

Bolero Infotainment system with navigation function



A Touchscreen

⏻ Control dial left
- › **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
- › **Turn:** Set volume

⊙ Control dial right
- › **Press:** Confirm menu item
- › **Turn:** select menu item/set value

RADIO **Radio** menu

MEDIA **Media** menu

PHONE **Phone** menu

VOICE Voice control

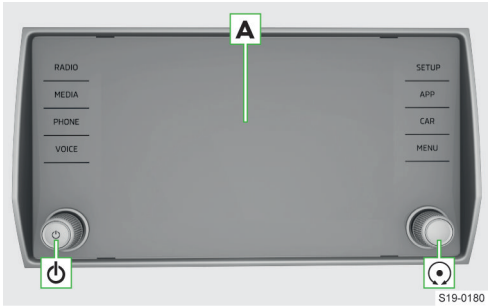
NAV **Navigation** menu

APP **SmartLink** menu

CAR Information about vehicle settings

MENU Overview of Infotainment menus

Bolero Infotainment without the navigation function



A Touchscreen

⏻ Control dial left
- › **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
- › **Turn:** Set volume

⊙ Control dial right
- › **Press:** Confirm menu item
- › **Turn:** select menu item/set value

RADIO **Radio** menu

MEDIA **Media** menu

PHONE **Phone** menu

VOICE Voice control

SETUP Infotainment settings

APP **SmartLink** menu

CAR Information about vehicle settings

MENU Overview of Infotainment menus

System

Cybernetic security

Updates and system support

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, keeps the systems in your vehicle up to date and provides you with full support in terms of the legal regulations for cybersecurity.

Restriction

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

When the ignition is switched off, some infotainment functions, e.g. driving data will not be available.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions

The following Infotainment functions are set in the MENU > ⚙ menu:

› Time and date
› Language
› Units
› Restore factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment system sound is set in the MENU > 🔊 menu.

The following settings are available in the menu:

› Equaliser
› Volume ratio
› Individual Infotainment functions volume

  The volume can be adjusted in e.g. one of the following menu items:

  › Volume adjustment of voice commands
  › Maximum volume when the Infotainment system is switched on
  › Speed-dependent volume
  › Muting the Infotainment system with the Parking Aid switched on.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following advanced sound settings are available:

› Space optimisation
› Audio profiles according to genre
› Subwoofer volume

Configuration assistant

The configuration assistant helps you set up some functions of the Infotainment system.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed when the ignition is switched on if there are at least two menu items that have not been set up after the Infotainment system is switched on.

› To **switch off the automatic display** when the configuration assistant is displayed, tap *Do not show again*.
› For **manual display** tap MENU > ⚙ > *Configuration assistant*.

Set up menu HOME

› To **display another page** of the HOME menu, press the screen with two fingers and drag it to the left or right.

To **add the preferred menu**, proceed as follows:

› Tap on an empty functional surface.

Or:

› Press and hold an occupied functional surface and then tap on an empty functional area.
› Select a menu with the desired dimension of the functional surface.
› Tap on ✕ to exit edit mode.

To **remove the preferred menu**, proceed as follows:

› Press an occupied functional surface.
› Tap on 🗑.
› Tap on ✕ to exit edit mode.

Set up menu MENU

The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows:

› Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.
› Move the functional surface to a different position.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding

If the infotainment does not respond, restart it as follows:

› Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend you have the system updated by a specialist garage..

The system update ensures that the Infotainment functions optimally.

Determine system version

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *System information*.

System update

› MENU > ⚙ > *System information* > *Update software* .
› Follow the instructions on the screen.

ⓘ The information regarding the completed system update is displayed in the list of information messages.

Install the navigation function

In some countries it is possible to use the Infotainment to extend the function of **Navigation**.

The function is available through the online service **Shop** or from a specialist company.

Screen

Overview



- **A** Status bar
- **B** Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
- **C** Display of the control centre
- **D** Other pages of the menu

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of screen damage!

› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Dragging up or down with two fingers



› Quickly review the list of phone contacts
› Switch 2D/3D map display

Dragging left or right with two fingers



› Display next page of the HOME menu

Pulling apart with two fingers



› Enlarge image
› Zoom into the map

Pulling together with two fingers



› Minimize image
› Zoom out of the map

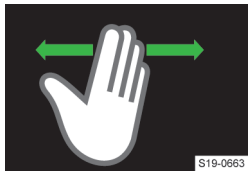
Turn two fingers



› Rotate image
› Rotate the map

Contactless gesture control

The Infotainment menus marked with the ✋ symbol can be controlled by hand gestures.



› Gesture control is achieved by slowly moving the hand back and forth approximately 8 cm above the lower edge of the screen.

Depending on the setting, a recognized gesture can be confirmed acoustically and animated.

Displaying operation help

› Tap on **MENU** > ▮ > ✎.

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *Screen*:

› Brightness level of the screen
› Switch off the screen
› Display the time
› Confirmation sounds and animations

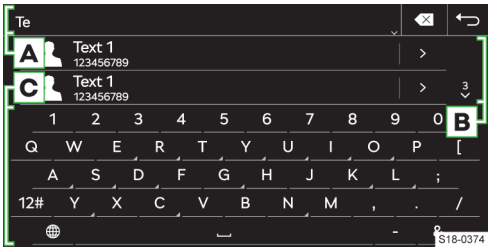
Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Keyboard types:

› Alphanumeric
› Numeric
› Keyboard for input
› Keyboard for search



Keypad example

A Input line

- ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters one after the other
- ⌄ Display functional surfaces for moving the cursor in the input line
  - ‹ Move cursor to the left
  - › Move cursor to the right

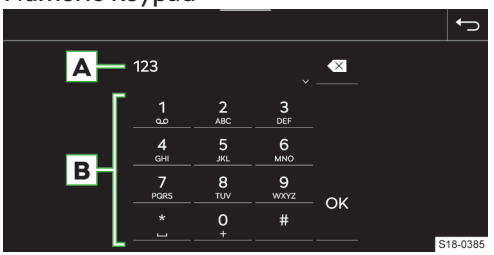
B Entries found

- ⌄ Show list

C Keypad functional surfaces

- ⇧ Change to lowercase
- ⇭ Switch to first having an upper-case letter, followed by lower-case letters
- ⇧ Switch to uppercase
- **ABC/АБВ** Switch to the language keypad
- **12#** Switch to the numeric and character keypad
- **1/2/2/2**Switch to other character variants
- 🌐 Show additional keyboard languages
- ⎵ Insert spaces
- ↵ The next line
- 𝔸 **Hold:** Show more character variants
- 👁 Show password
- OK Confirm the entered characters

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line

- ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

- OK Confirm the entered characters

ⓘ If it is possible depending on the context, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a function area with the number.

Operation

The infotainment keyboard is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keyboard will be **displayed automatically**when the infotainment prompts for characters.

Find

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

- To **display searched entries** tap ⌄.

Show additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

- Tap 🌐 or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

- Press and hold the character with the 𝔸 symbol.
- Select the desired symbol.

Setting up additional keyboard languages

- Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Additional keypad languages*.

Voice control

Functionality

Voice control principle

Voice control works according to the principle of dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user says a voice command. The Infotainment system responds or executes the voice command.

Advanced voice control

The vehicle's advanced voice control enables the vehicle functions to be searched and operated online.

Advanced voice control understands fluent whole sentences. You do not need to use set commands or phrases.

The advanced voice control can, for example, search for special destinations or dictate SMS messages if the connected telephone makes this possible.

This function allows you to combine the search in the online and offline data of the Infotainment. The transition between online and offline search is seamless and imperceptible to the user.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ Infotainment switched on

Operating conditions for advanced voice control

To use the advanced voice control, the following conditions must also be met:

- ✓ The vehicle supports the function.
- ✓ The vehicle has Infotainment and functions that can be controlled by the advanced voice control.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.
- ✓ The level of protection of personal data is set to *Share my position* .

Requirement for recognition of the activation command

- ✓ Activated menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Voice control* > *Active*

Operation

Switch on voice control

› Press the 🎙 button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"**.

After switching on, the icon 🎙 is displayed in the status bar.

Enter voice command

› Speak a voice command with voice control switched on.

During recognition of the voice command, the 🎙 icon is displayed.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays the message. During the message, the 🔊 icon is displayed.

After the execution of the voice command, voice control is switched off.

Correcting a voice command

› During voice command input, press the 🎙 button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"pause"**.

Resuming stopped voice control

› Press the 🎙 button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Tap on ⏸ in the Infotainment screen.

Stopping the played back message

› Press the 🎙 button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending voice control

› Press the 🎙 button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"cancel"** during voice command input.

Restriction

For some Infotainment languages, there is no voice control available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *Voice control*:

› Confirmation tones
› Enable/disable use of the activation word.

Self-help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say **"Help"**.

The **"Help"** voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying the help

› Tap on **MENU** > 📱 > 🎙.

Or:

› If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say **"overview"**.

Switch example voice commands display on / off

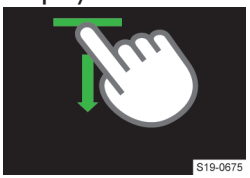
The system offers the option of displaying example voice commands after switching on the voice control in the Infotainment screen.

› To **turn** MENU > ⚙ > *voice control* on/off, tap > *Show in Infotainment system*.

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

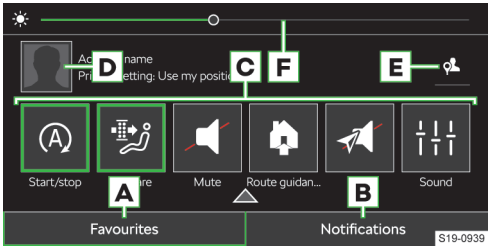
› Tap on ▲.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



- **A** Display and administration of functional surfaces of preferred features
- **B** Display list of informational messages
- **C** Preferred functions
- **D** Display user account management
- **E** Setting the personal data protection level
- **F** Setting the instrument and key illumination

Set functional areas of preferred features

› To **display** editing mode hold any function surface of the preferred feature.

› To **add** the preferred feature, move the desired feature from the top of the screen to the functional surface at the bottom of the screen.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ✕.

Radio

Overview

Display menu

› Tap RADIO.

Or:

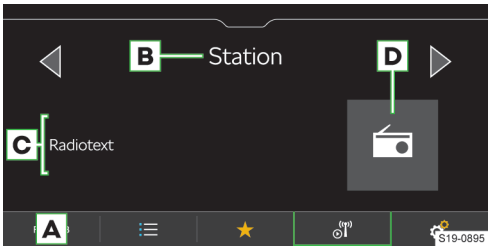
› Tap MENU > 📻.

Analogue and digital radio player

› Tap **A** and select the desired frequency range.

› Tap ☰ and search for or select the desired station.

› Tap on ⚙.



- **A** Select source
- **B** Station name
- **C** Information about the broadcast content
- **D** Station logos
- ☰ List of available stations
- ★ Show favourites
- ⚙ Information about the station
- Search stations manually (valid for AM and FM)
- ⚙ Settings

List of available analogue and digital radio stations

› Tap on ☰.

- ⊙ Played station
- ★ Station stored on the presets
- TP A traffic radio station is set
- The DAB transmitter emits images which are displayed in the information to the station
- ↻ Manual update of the station list

In the station list, information about the programme type and the channel identification of the regional channel can be displayed.

Web radio player

› **A** tap and select a web radio station.

› Tap 🔍 and search or select web radio.

› Tap on .



A Select source
B Station name
C Information about the broadcast content
D Station logos
Search List of web radio and podcasts
★ Show favourites
Information about the programme as well as the broadcast content of the web radio
Settings

Podcast player

› Tap A and select an online radio station.
› Tap and search for or select the desired pocast.
› Tap .



A Select source
B Podcast name
C Information about the broadcast content
D Podcast logo with the symbol
▷ **Tap:** Start playback
Tap: Pause
Tap: Go back 15 secs
Tap: Go forward 15 secs
View episodes of the podcast being played
Search List of web radio stations and podcasts
★ Show favourites
Show information about the podcast
Settings

List of web radio stations and podcasts

› Tap on .

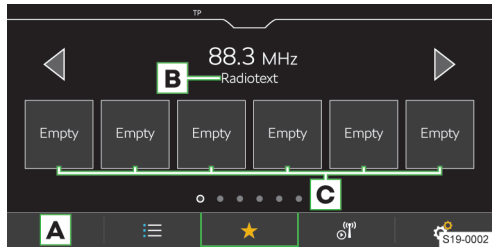


Search for web radio stations and podcasts
Recently played web radio stations and podcasts
100 most popular web radio stations depending on the Infotainment language that has been set
Go to podcasts and select
Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected country
Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected language
Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected genre
See list of related podcasts based on content listened to
See list of related podcasts based on content listened to

The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon .

List of favourite stations and podcasts

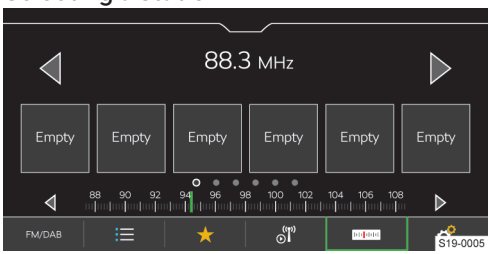
› In the menu Radio, tap on ★.



A Select source
B Radio text
C Station buttons for favourite stations and podcasts

Operation

Selecting a station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic play** ⚙ › press *Scan* .

› To **stop automatic play**, tap SCAN.

Finding stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› To display the button for FM station, switch on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Show stations:* › *FM*.

› Tap in the Radio menu.

› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Restriction

› Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

› In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

› The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.

› Tap the desired preset button.

Save channels from the list of web radio stations and podcasts

Valid for web radio stations and podcasts.

› Select a web radio station as the playback source.

› Tap on 🔍.

› Go to the desired web radio station or podcast and select it.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station or podcast.

› Tap the desired preset button.

With podcasts, it is not possible to save the individual episodes.

Deleting favourites

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ › *Delete memory entries* .

› To delete **a** station button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.

› To delete **all** station buttons for preferred stations *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Functional surfaces ◁ ▷ for analogue and digital radios

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** menu is set as follows:

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ › *Arrow buttons:* .

› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

Functional areas ◁ ▷ for web radio stations and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** menu is set as follows:

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ › *Arrow buttons:* .

› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station keys or the last web stations and podcasts listened to.

Switch on/switch off traffic reception (TP) for stations

Applies to FM and DAB frequency range.

› In the menu **Radio** ⚙ › *Traffic program (TP)* .

Assign station logo from the Infotainment memory

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option of assigning logos, which are stored in the Infotainment memory, to the stations.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Station logos* .
› Select the desired station and logo.

Switching off the station logo display

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Station logos* .
› To select the desired station. *No station logo* .

Activating / deactivating automatic station logo assignment

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Automatic selection of station logos* .

Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and the station buttons are displayed, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Radio text* .

Regional FM station logo

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The infotainment system provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Region for station logo:*.
› Choose country.

Switching additional announcements of the DAB station on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. Weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Additional DAB announcements* .

Switch RDS on / off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Radio Radio Data System (RDS)* .

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available:

› Traffic programme (TP)
› Radio text
› RDS Regional
› Automatic frequency change (AF)
› Regional station logo

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Switch to a similar station if weak reception* .

Display FM-/DAB-stations or FM-stations in the list of available stations

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Depending on the following setting, the stations of the selected frequency range are displayed in the list of available stations.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Station display:* .
› Select one of the following menu items:
› *FM/DAB* – the list shows available FM- and DAB stations.
› *FM* – the list shows available FM stations.

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

› To adjust the sound quality, tap on > Audio quality: in the **Radio** main menu. *Audio quality:* .
› Choose low or high quality.

The quality you set affects the amount of data used in the data connection.

Quality also depends on the speed and availability of the data connection.

If playback failure occur, reduce the sound quality.

Media

What you should be mindful of

› Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
› When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
› When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.

› The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

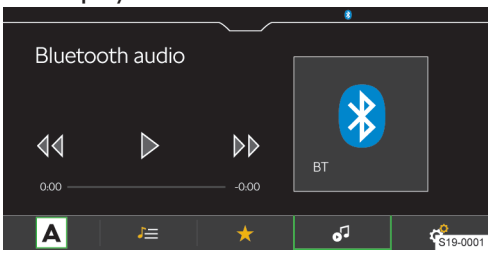
Display menu

› Tap **MEDIA**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > ♫.

Music player



A Choose source

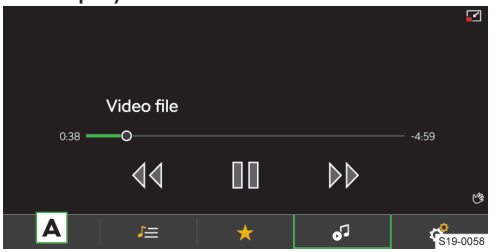
Manage files / multimedia database

★ Show favourites

Details about the track being played

Settings

Video player



A Select source

Manage files / multimedia database

★ Show favourites

Show video

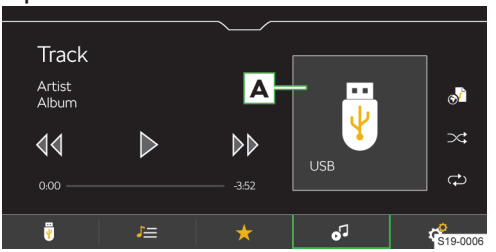
Shrink image display

Enlarge the image display

Settings

Player controls

Operation - Basics



A Album image / symbol of the connected source
› **Tap:** list available albums

▷ **Tap:** Start playback

▯▯ **Tap:** Pause

◁◁ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song

◁◁ **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap:** to play the current title from the beginning

◁◁ **Hold:** fast rewind within the track

▷▷ **Tap:** play the next track

▷▷ **Hold:** fast forward within the track

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder

Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder

Save the played track in the playlist "*My playlist*"

"My playlist" management

› To **display the playlist**, tap ♫ > ▯ > ▯ > .

› To **manage the playlist** tap ✎ in the displayed playlist.

The following activities can be carried out in playlist management:

› Control playback

› Change the order of a title in the list by holding and moving ≡ to the desired position.

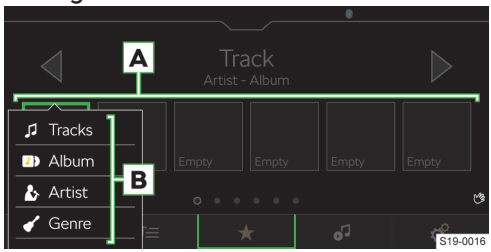
› Delete track by tapping on 🗑.

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Manage favourites



› To **save**, hold the desired functional area for favourites A.

› Choose one of the available list entries B.

› To **Clear**, in the menu **media** > tap on *Manage favourites* .

› To delete **a favourite**, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all favourites** tap on *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu > and tap on *Traffic program (TP)* .

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x, 3.x or higher with USB USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that support the USB Mass Storage protocol	
		MTP	Devices having an Android operating system, which support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices running the iOS operating system and iAP2 protocol	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2
MPEG 2 Layer 2	
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	
Windows Media Audio 7	wma
Windows Media Audio 8	
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	
Windows Media Audio 9.2	
Windows Media Audio 10	
AAC LC	aac m4a
AAC-HE	
AAC-HEv2	
ALAC	m4a
OGG-Vorbis	ogg
FLAC	flac
PCM	wav
RIFF	
SBC	-
Monkey's	ape
OPUS	OPUS

Files that are protected by DRM and iTunes® technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mpv
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov
MJPEG	
MPEG 4 (ISO)	
Xvid	Xvid
WMV9	wmv asf

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8

Codec type	File extension
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

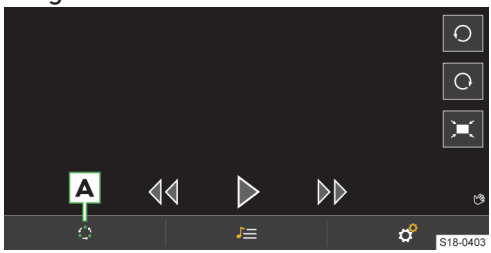
Images

Overview

Display menu

› Tap **MENU** > .

Image viewer



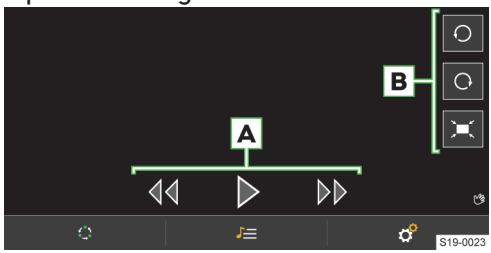
A Select source

Manage files

Settings

Operation

Operation using functional areas



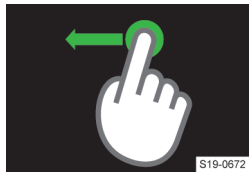
A View images

- Show the next image
- Show the previous image
- Start slideshow
- Stop slideshow

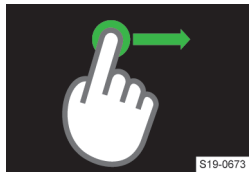
B View image

- Turn left
- Turn right
- Show in output size

Gesture control



› Display of the next image



› Display the previous image



› Increase the image size



› Reduce the image size



› Rotate by 90 °

Settings

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > > menu:

- Display image size
- Display image duration during the slideshow
- Slideshow repeat

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x, 3.x or higher with USB USB 2.x support	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
		HDD (without special software)	

Supported files

Codec type	File extension	Max. resolution [Mpx]
BMP	bmp	4
JPG; JPEG	jpg; jpeg	4 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

The maximum supported image size is 20 MB.

Mobile device management

Cybernetic security

Your vehicle contains components that are used to exchange information and data between the vehicle and the connected mobile devices or the Internet.

These components have security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and vehicle functions. The following guidelines must therefore be observed:

› Use only media carriers, Bluetooth® devices and mobile devices that contain no harmful data or malware.

› Regularly update the software provided by ŠKODA AUTO.

We recommend having the system software and components updated by a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

Malware in the vehicle can influence and deactivate certain vehicle functions, or take over the controls of these where applicable.

› If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, immediately reduce speed or stop the vehicle.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

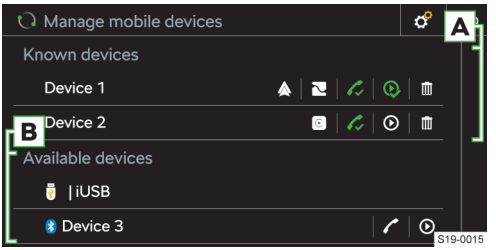
Malware in the vehicle may gain unauthorised access to the information and data of the vehicle, and on occasion, to connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management

› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.



A Connected / Previously connected devices

B Available devices

The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® "hands-free profile"

The device is connected via the Bluetooth®"hands-free profile"

The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile

The device is connected via the Bluetooth® audio profile

Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**

The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Android Auto

The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Apple CarPlay

The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via MirrorLink

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee full Bluetooth® compatibility with infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version and the implementation of the Bluetooth® protocols on the part of the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices

Applications can be installed in external devices making it possible to display additional information on the Infotainment screen or to operate Infotainment.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work in all external devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper function.

The range of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the Infotainment model, vehicle and region.

Information about ŠKODAapplications

Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link:

http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found by tapping on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Device name:* .

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously connected mobile device

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* .

Or:

› **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **previously connected devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

› Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
› Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

Overview

Display menu

› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > ✆.

ⓘ If the menu **phone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.



A Name of the connected telephone
› **Tap:** Show list of previously connected phones

B Name of telephone service providers
› If the symbol ▷ is displayed in front of the name, roaming is active.

C Preset buttons for preferred contacts

Change the main telephone with the additional telephone

Enter telephone number

Contact list

Text messages / emails

Call lists

Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Visibility*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ▦.

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

ⓘ The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **phone** menu, tap on 📇.

› To **search** within the list, tap on *Enter contact* .

› Enter the details you wish to find.

› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ▦ > ⌾⌾.

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

End connection / reject incoming call / end call

Answer an incoming call / return to the held call

Switch the ringer off / on

Hold a call

Switch the microphone off / on

Show details of the caller

Reject an incoming call using an SMS message

Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the telephone**, go to **telephone** in the menu and tap on ⚙ > *speakerphone* .

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap 🔊.

Conference call

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping .

› To **start** a conference call, tap on 👤+👤.

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context:

Hold the conference call and leave temporarily
The conference will continue in the background

Return to the held conference call

Switch the microphone off / on

End conference call

Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected:

- Show details of the conference call participants
- End conversation with the conference call participant
- Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Send a text message

› In the **Telephone** > menu, tap *Messages* > *New SMS* .
› Write a text message and confirm; a view of the message is displayed.

The message can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the message.
› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.
› *Tap on Send* .

Display received text messages

› In the **Telephone** > menu, tap *Messages* > or .
› Messages that are received are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following setting:

To **switch the display of messages in a conversation on or off**, tap in the **Phone** >menu*Show messages as conversation* .

› To **switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new message **on or off**, tap in the **Phone** >menu *New message notifications* .

Infotainment offers the possibility to read the text message (context-dependent) by means of the generated Infotainment voice if is tapped.

Send e-mails

› In the **Telephone** > menu, tap *Emails* > *New emails* .
› Write an e-mail and confirm that an e-mail is displayed.

The text can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the email.
› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.
› Enter the subject of the e-mail.
› *Tap on Send* .

Show received e-mails

› In the **Telephone** > menu, tap *Emails* > .
› Select the desired e-mail.
› To **switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new email **on or off**, tap in the **Phone** >menu *New message notifications* .

Settings for Infotainment telephone functions

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment:

› **No telephone**– The telephone is connected as the main telephone.
› **One telephone**– The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.
› **Two telephones**– Select the telephone to be replaced.
› To **switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on in the **Phone** menu.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found in menu item **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* > > *Device name:* .

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connecting the Infotainment system to an unpaired telephone – no telephone is connected

› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > .
› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Connecting Infotainment to a non-paired telephone – another telephone is connected

› **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

› If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone

› **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* .

Or:

› **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone* .

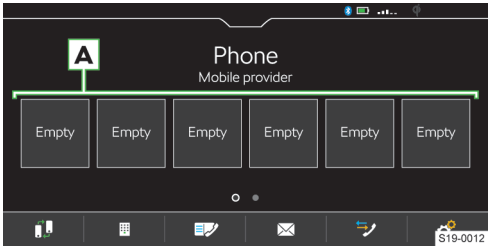
› Select the desired device from the list of **previously connected devices**.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

› If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts



› To **save** the desired preset button, hold A.

› Select a contact from the displayed list.

› If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.

› To **display the menu for deletion,** go to the **phone** menu ⚙ >and tap on *Manage favourites* .

› To delete **one** preset, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** station buttons, tap *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 5000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** ⚙ > menu *tap on Import contacts* .

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *Sort by:* Tap and select the sorting type.

Ringtone

Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› For **setting the Infotainment ringtone** in the **phone** ⚙ >menu *select the ringtone* .

› Select the ringtone.

Number for the voice mailbox

› For **setting the voice mailbox number** in the **phone** ⚙ > menu *Mailbox number:* .

› Enter the voice mailbox number.

Turn the graphic notice regarding receiving a new message/email on or off

If the function is activated, when a new message / e-mail is received, the symbol of a new message is displayed in the status bar and in the functional surface for the messages.

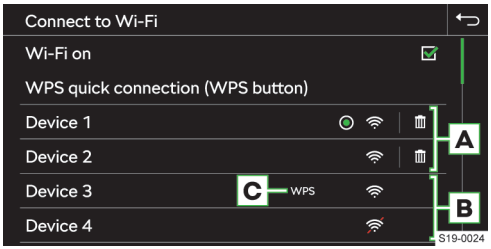
› In the **Telephone** ⚙ >menu *New message notifications* .

Wi-Fi

Overview of available hotspots

Display available hotspots

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



A Previously connected hotspots

B Available hotspots

C The hotspot supports the WPS connection

⊙ Currently connected hotspot

🗑 Delete information about the hotspot connection

Wi-Fi signal strength of the hotspot

The Wi-Fi signal from the hotspot is not available

Functionality

The Wi-Fi can be used for the internet connection or for the SmartLinkConnection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.
› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.
› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network key*.

› Confirm the connection.

Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* > *WiFi active* switch on
› Select the desired hotspot in the list of available hotspots.
› Enter the password for connecting to mobile devices.

ⓘ Infotainment stores passwords for previously connected hotspots.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Activate/deactivate data transfer between the Infotainment and the connected device

› To turn data transmission on or off, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices* > 🌍.

Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.
› Enter the name and confirm.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Network key* .
› Enter the password and confirm.

Quick connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› On the mobile device, turn on the hotspot, its visibility, and the option for WPS connection.
› **MENU**> ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* > *Tap WPS quick connection (WPS button)* .

Automatic WPS connection

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* .
› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Manual WPS connection

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS PIN.

The mobile device display will show the WPS PIN for connecting to the Infotainment.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* > ⓘ > *WPS-PIN* .
› Enter the WPS PIN in the Infotainment and confirm.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Automatic connection using the QR code

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* .
› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via QR Code.
› With the mobile device, read the QR code displayed on the Infotainment screen.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Tips for a perfect connection

ⓘ

› Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.
› Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.
› For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.
› If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

Function restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

Supported connection types

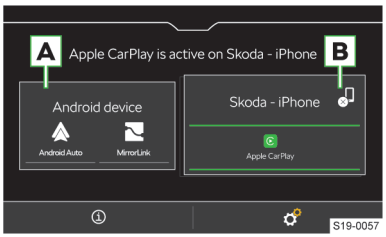
SmartLink supports the following connection types:

› Android Auto
› Apple CarPlay
› MirrorLink

Overview of the SmartLinkconnection

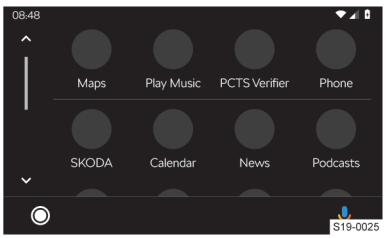
Menu SmartLink

› Tap **MENU** > SmartLink.



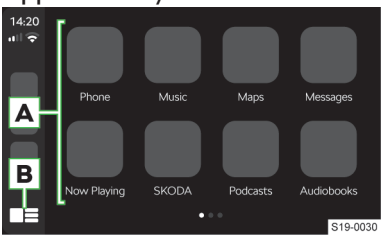
A Previously connected device
B Currently connected device
ⓘ Display of information about SmartLink
Separation of the active connection
Settings for the SmartLink menu

Android Auto



Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
Switch on voice control (Google Assistant)

Apple CarPlay



A List of available applications
B Depending on the duration of operation:
› **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay menu
› **Hold:** Switch on Siri voice control

MirrorLink



It is not possible to operate the application while driving
Return to the SmartLink menu
List of running applications
Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices
Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.
✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the respective market.
✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

✓ The device to be connected supports the Android Autoconnection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection sup-

ports can be found on the websites of Google Inc.

- ✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.
- ✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time with the vehicle stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the Apple CarPlayconnection.

  A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc.
- ✓ Siri voice control is on.
- ✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

- ✓ The device to be connected supports the MirrorLink connection.

  A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.
- ✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

- Display of control surfaces at the bottom
- Display of control surfaces at the top
- Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay – Connection using USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .
› Select the connection using Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Connect via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

› Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* .
› In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol .
› Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay – Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the infotainment system.

› In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.
› Press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

  The infotainment system screen displays a connection message with the name of the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.
› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Disconnect

› In the menu Apple CarPlay, tap on the function area “SKODA”.
› Tap on .

Android Auto – Connection using USB

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .
› Select the connection using Android Auto.

Android Auto – Connection via Wi-Fi from the infotainment system

› Tap on **MENU** > Smart Link > > *mobile devices*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the Bluetooth® handsfree profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
› From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the ⏏ symbol.

Android Auto – Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the infotainment system.
✓ The minimum Android version is 11.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› On the infotainment system screen, select the Android Auto connection type.

Android Auto – Disconnect

› In the menu Android Auto ⚙ > tap “SKODA”.
› Tap on .

MirrorLink – Connection using USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .
› Select the connection using MirrorLink.

MirrorLink – Disconnect

› In the MirrorLink menu, tap on Smart Link.
› Tap on .

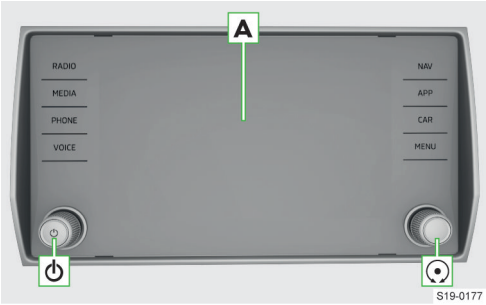
Change to another device / connection type

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› Tap on **MENU** > Smart Link.
› Select the desired device or connection type.

Infotainment Amundsen

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

Control dial left
- **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
- **Turn:** Set volume

Control dial right
- **Press:** Confirm menu item
- **Turn:** select menu item/set value

RADIO **Radio** menu

MEDIA **Media** menu

PHONE **Phone** menu

VOICE Voice control

NAV **Navigation** menu

APP **SmartLink** menu

CAR Information about vehicle settings

MENU Overview of Infotainment menus

System

Cybernetic security

Updates and system support

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, keeps the systems in your vehicle up to date and provides you with full support in terms of the legal regulations for cybersecurity.

Restriction

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

When the ignition is switched off, some infotainment functions, e.g. driving data will not be available.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > menu:

- Time and date
- Language
- Units
- Restore factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment system sound is set in the **MENU** > menu.

The following settings are available in the menu:

- Equaliser
- Volume ratio
- Individual Infotainment functions volume

  The volume can be adjusted in e.g. one of the following menu items:

  - Volume adjustment of voice commands
  - Maximum volume when the Infotainment system is switched on
  - Speed-dependent volume
  - Muting the Infotainment system with the Parking Aid switched on.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following advanced sound settings are available:

- Space optimisation
- Audio profiles according to genre
- Subwoofer volume

Configuration assistant

The configuration assistant helps you set up some functions of the Infotainment system.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed when the ignition is switched on if there are at least two menu items that have not been set up after the Infotainment system is switched on.

› To **switch off the automatic display** when the configuration assistant is displayed, tap *Do not show again*.

› For **manual display** tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Configuration assistant*.

Set up menu HOME

› To **display another page** of the HOME menu, press the screen with two fingers and drag it to the left or right.

To **add the preferred menu**, proceed as follows:

› Tap on an empty functional surface.

Or:

› Press and hold an occupied functional surface and then tap on an empty functional area.

› Select a menu with the desired dimension of the functional surface.

› Tap on ✕ to exit edit mode.

To **remove the preferred menu**, proceed as follows:

› Press an occupied functional surface.

› Tap on 🗑.

› Tap on ✕ to exit edit mode.

Set up menu MENU

The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows:

› Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.

› Move the functional surface to a different position.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding

If the infotainment does not respond, restart it as follows:

› Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.

› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend you have the system updated by a specialist garage..

The system update ensures that the Infotainment functions optimally.

Determine system version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

System update

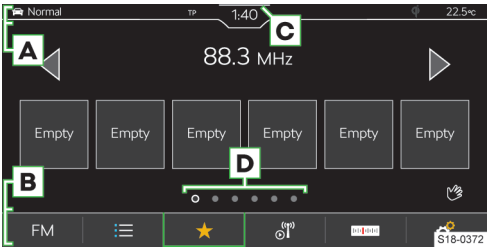
› **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information* > *Update software* .

› Follow the instructions on the screen.

ⓘ The information regarding the completed system update is displayed in the list of information messages.

Screen

Overview



A	Status bar
B	Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
C	Display of the control centre
D	Other pages of the menu

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of screen damage!

› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

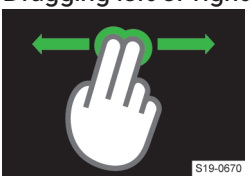
Dragging up or down with two fingers



› Quickly review the list of phone contacts

› Switch 2D/3D map display

Dragging left or right with two fingers



› Display next page of the HOME menu

Pulling apart with two fingers



› Enlarge image

› Zoom into the map

Pulling together with two fingers



› Minimize image
› Zoom out of the map

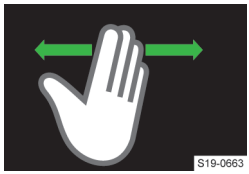
Turn two fingers



› Rotate image
› Rotate the map

Contactless gesture control

The Infotainment menus marked with the symbol can be controlled by hand gestures.



› Gesture control is achieved by slowly moving the hand back and forth approximately 8 cm above the lower edge of the screen.

Depending on the setting, a recognized gesture can be confirmed acoustically and animated.

Displaying operation help

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Screen*:

› Brightness level of the screen
› Switch off the screen
› Display the time
› Confirmation sounds and animations

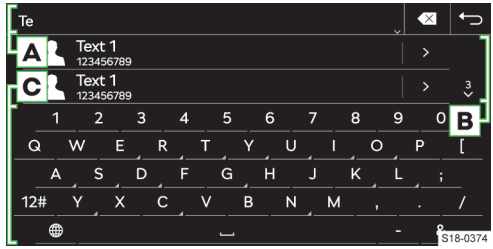
Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Keyboard types:

› Alphanumeric
› Numeric
› Keyboard for input
› Keyboard for search



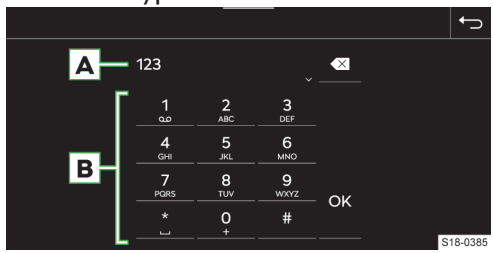
Keypad example

A Input line
› Delete characters before the cursor
› **Tap:** delete the last character
› **Hold:** delete all characters one after the other
› Display functional surfaces for moving the cursor in the input line
› Move cursor to the left
› Move cursor to the right

B Entries found
› Show list

C Keypad functional surfaces
› Change to lowercase
› Switch to first having an upper-case letter, followed by lower-case letters
› Switch to uppercase
› **ABC/АБВ** Switch to the language keypad
› **12#** Switch to the numeric and character keypad
› **1/2/2/2**Switch to other character variants
› Show additional keyboard languages
› Insert spaces
› The next line
› **Hold:** Show more character variants
› Show password
› Confirm the entered characters

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
› Delete characters before the cursor

› **Tap:** delete the last character
› **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

› OK Confirm the entered characters

If it is possible depending on the context, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a function area with the number.

Operation

The infotainment keyboard is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keyboard will be **displayed automatically** when the infotainment prompts for characters.

Find

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap ⌄.

Show additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› Tap ⊕ or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

› Press and hold the character with the A symbol.
› Select the desired symbol.

Setting additional keypad languages

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Additional keypad languages*.

Voice control

Functionality

Voice control principle

Voice control works according to the principle of dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user says a voice command. The Infotainment system responds or executes the voice command.

Advanced voice control

The advanced voice control of the vehicle enables an online search and operation of the vehicle functions.

The advanced voice control understands fluently spoken, complete sentences. You do not need to use set commands or phrases.

The advanced voice control can, for example, search for special destinations or dictate SMS messages if the connected telephone makes this possible.

This function allows you to combine the search in the online and offline data of the Infotainment. The transition between online and offline search is seamless and imperceptible to the user.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on
✓ Infotainment switched on

Operating conditions for advanced voice control

To use the advanced voice control, the following conditions must also be met.

✓ The vehicle supports the function.
✓ The vehicle has Infotainment and functions that can be controlled by the advanced voice control.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.
✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to *Share my position* .

Requirement for recognition of the activation command

✓ Activated menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Voice control* > *Active*

Operation

Switch on voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"**.

After switching on, the icon is displayed in the status bar.

Enter voice command

› Speak a voice command with voice control switched on.

During recognition of the voice command, the icon is displayed.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays the message. During the message, the icon is displayed.

After the execution of the voice command, voice control is switched off.

Correcting a voice command

› During voice command input, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"pause"**.

Resuming stopped voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Tap on in the Infotainment screen.

Stopping the played back message

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"cancel"** during voice command input.

Restriction

For some Infotainment languages, there is no voice control available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Voice control*:

› Confirmation tones

› Enable/disable use of the activation word.

Self-help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say **"Help"**.

The **"Help"** voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying the help

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

Or:

› If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say **"overview"**.

Switch example voice commands display on / off

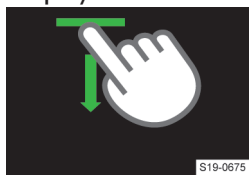
The system offers the option of displaying example voice commands after switching on the voice control in the Infotainment screen.

› To **turn** **MENU** > > *voice control* on/off, tap > *Show in Infotainment system*.

Control Centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

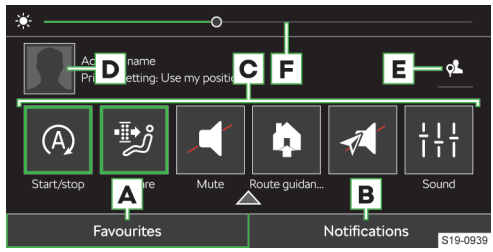
› Tap on ▲.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



- **A** Display and administration of functional surfaces of preferred features
- **B** Display list of informational messages
- **C** Preferred functions
- **D** Display user account management
- **E** Setting the personal data protection level
- **F** Setting the instrument and key illumination

Set functional surfaces of preferred features

› To **display** editing mode hold any function surface of the preferred feature.

› To **add** the preferred feature, move the desired feature from the top of the screen to the functional surface at the bottom of the screen.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ✕.

Radio

Overview

Display menu

› Tap **RADIO**.

Or:

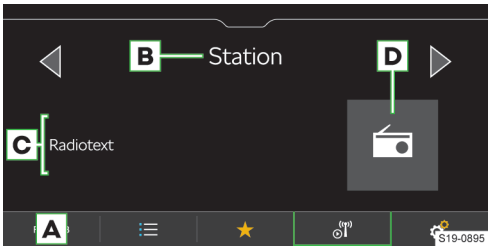
› Tap **MENU** > .

Analogue and digital radio player

› Tap A and select the desired frequency range.

› Tap ⁝≡ and search for or select the desired station.

› Tap on .



A Select source

B Station name

C Information about the broadcast content

D Station logos

⁝≡ List of available stations

★ Show favourites

Information about the station

Search stations manually (valid for AM and FM)

Settings

List of available analogue and digital radio stations

› Tap on ⁝≡.

Played station

★ Station stored on the presets

TP A traffic radio station is set

The DAB transmitter emits images which are displayed in the information to the station

Manual update of the station list

In the station list, information about the programme type and the channel identification of the regional channel can be displayed.

Web radio player

› A tap and select a web radio station.

› Tap and search or select web radio.

› Tap on .



A Select source

B Station name

C Information about the broadcast content

D Station logos

List of web radio and podcasts

★ Show favourites

Information about the programme as well as the broadcast content of the web radio

Settings

Podcast player

› Tap A and select an online radio station.

› Tap and search for or select the desired pocast.

› Tap .



A Select source

B Podcast name

C Information about the broadcast content

D Podcast logo with the symbol

Tap: Start playback

Tap: Pause

Tap: Go back 15 secs

Tap: Go forward 15 secs

View episodes of the podcast being played

List of web radio stations and podcasts

★ Show favourites

Show information about the podcast

Settings

List of web radio stations and podcasts

› Tap on .



Search for web radio stations and podcasts

Recently played web radio stations and podcasts

100 most popular web radio stations depending on the Infotainment language that has been set

Go to podcasts and select

Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected country

Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected language

Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected genre

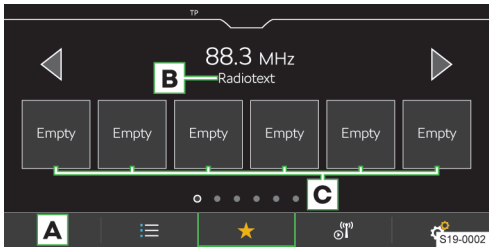
See list of related podcasts based on content listened to

See list of related podcasts based on content listened to

The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon .

List of favourite stations and podcasts

› In the menu Radio, tap on ★.



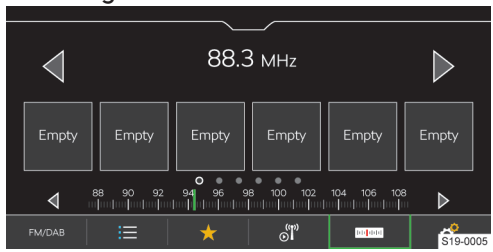
A Select source

B Radio text

C Station buttons for favourite stations and podcasts

Operation

Selecting a station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic play** > press *Scan* .

› To **stop automatic play**, tap SCAN.

Finding stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› To display the button for FM station, switch on > *Advanced settings* > *Show stations:* > *FM*.

› Tap in the Radio menu.

› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Restriction

› Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

› In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

› The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
› Tap the desired preset button.

Save channels from the list of web radio stations and podcasts

Valid for web radio stations and podcasts.

› Select a web radio station as the playback source.
› Tap on .
› Go to the desired web radio station or podcast and select it.
› Hold the line with the name of the desired station or podcast.
› Tap the desired preset button.

With podcasts, it is not possible to save the individual episodes.

Deleting favourites

› In the menu **Radio** > *Delete memory entries* .
› To delete **a** station button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** station buttons for preferred stations *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Functional surfaces ◁ ▷ for analogue and digital radios

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** menu is set as follows:

› In the menu **Radio** > *Arrow buttons:* .
› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

Functional areas ◁ ▷ for web radio stations and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** menu is set as follows:

› In the menu **Radio** > *Arrow buttons:* .
› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station keys or the last web stations and podcasts listened to.

Switch on/switch off traffic reception (TP) for stations

Applies to FM and DAB frequency range.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Traffic program (TP)* .

Assign station logo from the Infotainment memory

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option of assigning logos, which are stored in the Infotainment memory, to the stations.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Station logos* .
› Select the desired station and logo.

Switching off the station logo display

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Station logos* .
› To select the desired station. *No station logo* .

Activating / deactivating automatic station logo assignment

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Automatic selection of station logos* .

Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and the station buttons are displayed, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Radio text* .

Regional FM station logo

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The infotainment system provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Region for station logo:*.
› Choose country.

Switching additional announcements of the DAB station on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. Weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Additional DAB announcements* .

Switch RDS on / off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Radio Radio Data System (RDS)* .

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available:

› Traffic programme (TP)

› Radio text
› RDS Regional
› Automatic frequency change (AF)
› Regional station logo

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Switch to a similar station if weak reception* .

Display FM-/DAB-stations or FM-stations in the list of available stations

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Depending on the following setting, the stations of the selected frequency range are displayed in the list of available stations.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Station display:* .
› Select one of the following menu items:
› *FM/DAB* – the list shows available FM- and DAB stations.
› *FM* – the list shows available FM stations.

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

› To adjust the sound quality, tap on > Audio quality: in the **Radio** main menu. *Audio quality:* .
› Choose low or high quality.

The quality you set affects the amount of data used in the data connection.

Quality also depends on the speed and availability of the data connection.

If playback failure occur, reduce the sound quality.

Media

What you should be mindful of

› Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
› When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
› When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
› The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

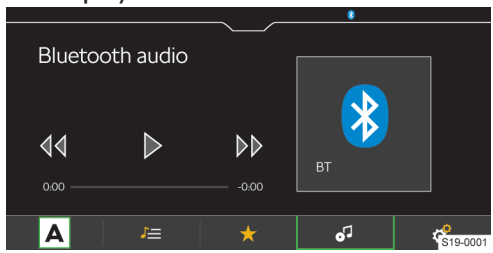
Display menu

› Tap **MEDIA**.

Or:

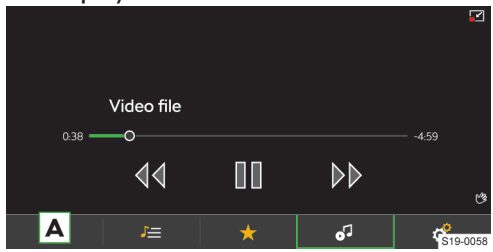
› Tap **MENU** > ♫.

Music player



A Choose source
Manage files / multimedia database
★ Show favourites
Details about the track being played
Settings

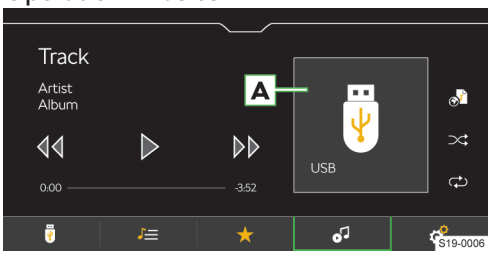
Video player



A Select source
Manage files / multimedia database
★ Show favourites
Show video
Shrink image display
Enlarge the image display
Settings

Player controls

Operation - Basics



A Album image / symbol of the connected source
› **Tap:** list available albums

▷ **Tap:** Start playback

▯▯ **Tap:** Pause

⏮ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song

⏮ **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap:** to play the current title from the beginning

⏮ **Hold:** fast rewind within the track

⏭ **Tap:** play the next track

⏭ **Hold:** fast forward within the track

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

🔁 Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track

🔁 Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder

🔀 Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder

Save the played track in the playlist "*My playlist*"

"My playlist" management

› To **display the playlist**, tap ♫☰ › 🖫 › 🖑 › .

› To **manage the playlist** tap ✎ in the displayed playlist.

The following activities can be carried out in playlist management:

› Control playback

› Change the order of a title in the list by holding and moving ☰ to the desired position.

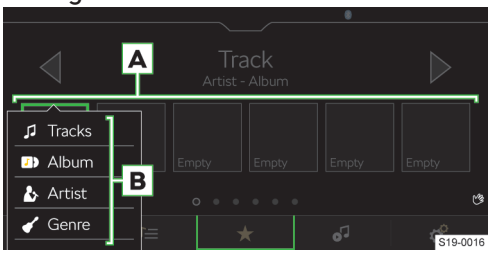
› Delete track by tapping on 🗑.

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Manage favourites



› To **save**, hold the desired functional area for favourites A.

› Choose one of the available list entries B.

› To **Clear**, in the menu **media** ⚙ › tap on *Manage favourites* .

› To delete **a favourite**, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all favourites** tap on *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu ⚙ › and tap on *Traffic program (TP)* .

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x, 3.x or higher with USB USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that support the USB Mass Storage protocol	
		MTP	Devices having an Android operating system, which support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices running the iOS operating system and iAP2 protocol	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2
MPEG 2 Layer 2	
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	
Windows Media Audio 7	wma
Windows Media Audio 8	
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	
Windows Media Audio 9.2	
Windows Media Audio 10	

Codec type	File extension
AAC LC	aac m4a
AAC-HE	
AAC-HEv2	
ALAC	m4a
OGG-Vorbis	ogg
FLAC	flac
PCM	wav
RIFF	
SBC	-
Monkey's	ape
OPUS	OPUS

Files that are protected by DRM and iTunes® technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mpv
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov
MJPEG	
MPEG 4 (ISO)	
Xvid	Xvid
WMV9	wmv asf

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

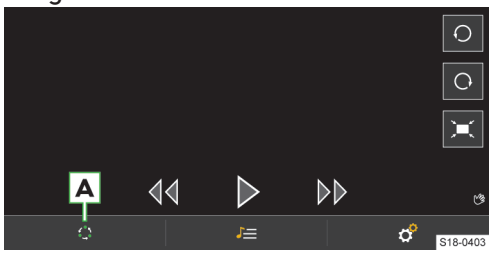
Images

Overview

Display menu

› Tap **MENU** > .

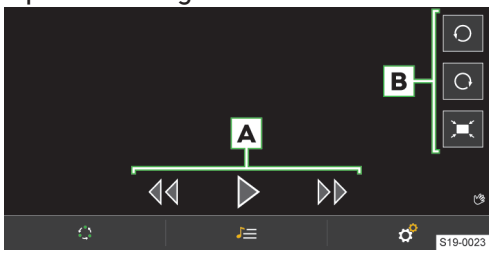
Image viewer



A Select source
Manage files
Settings

Operation

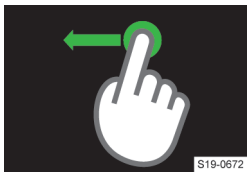
Operation using functional areas



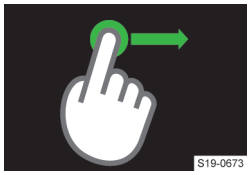
A View images
- Show the next image
- Show the previous image
- Start slideshow
- Stop slideshow

B View image
- Turn left
- Turn right
- Show in output size

Gesture control



› Display of the next image



› Display the previous image



› Increase the image size



› Reduce the image size



› Rotate by 90 °

Settings

The following Infotainment functions are set in the MENU > > menu:

- Display image size
- Display image duration during the slideshow
- Slideshow repeat

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x, 3.x or higher with USB USB 2.x support	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
		HDD (without special software)	

Supported files

Codec type	File extension	Max. resolution [Mpx]
BMP	bmp	4
JPG; JPEG	jpg; jpeg	4 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

The maximum supported image size is 20 MB.

Mobile device management

Cybernetic security

Your vehicle contains components that are used to exchange information and data between the vehicle and the connected mobile devices or the Internet.

These components have security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and vehicle functions. The following guidelines must therefore be observed:

› Use only media carriers, Bluetooth® devices and mobile devices that contain no harmful data or malware.
› Regularly update the software provided by ŠKODA AUTO.

We recommend having the system software and components updated by a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
Malware in the vehicle can influence and deactivate certain vehicle functions, or take over the controls of these where applicable.
› If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, immediately reduce speed or stop the vehicle.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

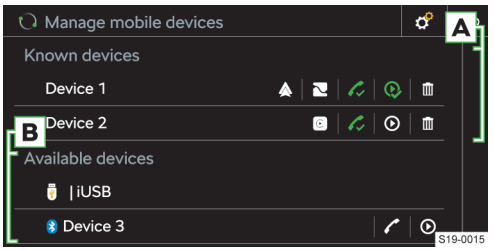
Malware in the vehicle may gain unauthorised access to the information and data of the vehicle, and on occasion, to connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management

› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.



A Connected / Previously connected devices
B Available devices

The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® “hands-free profile”
The device is connected via the Bluetooth®“hands-free profile”
The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile
The device is connected via the Bluetooth® audio profile
Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**
The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Android Auto
The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Apple CarPlay
The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via MirrorLink

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee full Bluetooth® compatibility with infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version and the implementation of the Bluetooth® protocols on the part of the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices

Applications can be installed in external devices making it possible to display additional information on the Infotainment screen or to operate Infotainment.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may

not work in all external devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper function.

The range of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the Infotainment model, vehicle and region.

Information about ŠKODAapplications

Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link:

http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.

› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found by tapping on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Device name:* .

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* .

› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously connected mobile device

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* .

Or:

› **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* .

› Select the desired device from the list of **previously connected devices**.

› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.

› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

› Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.

› Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

Overview

Display menu

› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > ✆.

ⓘ If the menu **phone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.



A Name of the connected telephone

› **Tap:** Show list of previously connected phones

B Name of telephone service providers

› If the symbol ▷ is displayed in front of the name, roaming is active.

C Preset buttons for preferred contacts

Change the main telephone with the additional telephone

Enter telephone number

Contact list

Text messages / emails

Call lists

Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Visibility*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ▦.

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

ⓘ The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **phone** menu, tap on 📖.

› To **search** within the list, tap on *Enter contact* .

› Enter the details you wish to find.

› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ▦ > ⌾.

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

End connection / reject incoming call / end call
Answer an incoming call / return to the held call
🔇/🔊 Switch the ringer off / on
Hold a call
🎤/🎤 Switch the microphone off / on
Show details of the caller
Reject an incoming call using an SMS message
Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the telephone**, go to **telephone** in the menu and tap on ⚙ > *speakerphone* .

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap 🔊.

Conference call

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping ✓ .

› To **start** a conference call, tap on 👥+.

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context:

Hold the conference call and leave temporarily
The conference will continue in the background
Return to the held conference call
🎤/🎤 Switch the microphone off / on
End conference call
Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected:

Show details of the conference call participants
End conversation with the conference call participant
Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Send a text message

› In the **Telephone** ✉ > ✉ menu, tap *Messages* > ✎ *New SMS* .

› Write a text message and confirm; a view of the message is displayed.

The message can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the message.

› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.

› *Tap on Send* .

Display received text messages

› In the **Telephone** ✉ > ✉ menu, tap *Messages* > ✉ or ✉.

› Messages that are received are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following setting:

To **switch the display of messages in a conversation on or off**, tap in the **Phone** ⚙ >menu*Show messages as conversation* .

› To **switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new message **on or off**, tap in the **Phone** ⚙ >menu *New message notifications* .

ⓘ Infotainment offers the possibility to read the text message (context-dependent) by means of the generated Infotainment voice if 💬 is tapped.

Send e-mails

› In the **Telephone** > menu, tap *Emails* > *New emails* .
› Write an e-mail and confirm that an e-mail is displayed.

The text can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the email.
› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.
› Enter the subject of the e-mail.
› *Tap on Send* .

Show received e-mails

› In the **Telephone** > menu, tap *Emails* > .
› Select the desired e-mail.
› To **switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new email **on or off**, tap in the **Phone** >menu *New message notifications* .

Settings for Infotainment telephone functions

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment:

› **No telephone**– The telephone is connected as the main telephone.
› **One telephone**– The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.
› **Two telephones**– Select the telephone to be replaced.
› To **switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on in the **Phone** menu.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found in menu item **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* > > *Device name:* .

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connecting the Infotainment system to an unpaired telephone – no telephone is connected

› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > .
› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Connecting Infotainment to a non-paired telephone – another telephone is connected

› **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

› If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone

› **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* .

Or:

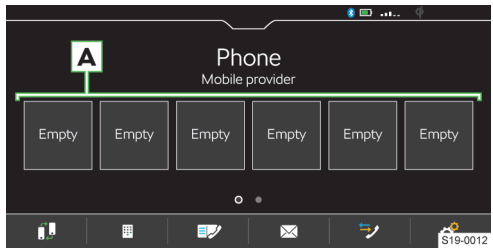
› **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **previously connected devices**.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

› If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts



› To **save** the desired preset button, hold A.
› Select a contact from the displayed list.
› If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.
› To **display the menu for deletion,** go to the **phone** menu >and tap on *Manage favourites* .
› To delete **one** preset, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** station buttons, tap *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Import telephone contacts
After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 5000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts
When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** > menu *tap on Import contacts* .

Sort contacts in the phone book
› In the **Telephone** >menu *Sort by:* Tap and select the sorting type.

Ringtone
Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› For **setting the Infotainment ringtone** in the **phone** >menu *select the ringtone* .

› Select the ringtone.

Number for the voice mailbox
› For **setting the voice mailbox number** in the **phone** > menu *Mailbox number:* .

› Enter the voice mailbox number.

Turn the graphic notice regarding receiving a new message/email on or off
If the function is activated, when a new message / e-mail is received, the symbol of a new message is displayed in the status bar and in the functional surface for the messages.

› In the **Telephone** >menu *New message notifications* .

Wi-Fi

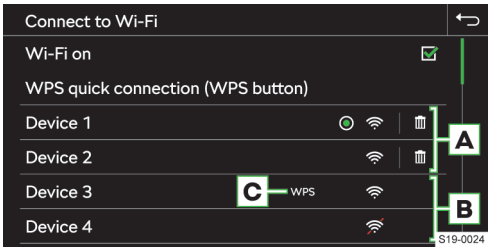
Functionality
The Wi-Fi can be used for the internet connection or for the SmartLinkConnection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

Overview of available hotspots

Display available hotspots
› Tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



A Previously connected hotspots

B Available hotspots

C The hotspot supports the WPS connection

Currently connected hotspot

Delete information about the hotspot connection

Wi-Fi signal strength of the hotspot

The Wi-Fi signal from the hotspot is not available

Function restriction
The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection
In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot
› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.

› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.

› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network key*.

› Confirm the connection.

Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* > *WiFi active* switch on
› Select the desired hotspot in the list of available hotspots.
› Enter the password for connecting to mobile devices.

ⓘ Infotainment stores passwords for previously connected hotspots.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Activate/deactivate data transfer between the Infotainment and the connected device

› To turn data transmission on or off, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices* > ⚙.

Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.
› Enter the name and confirm.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Network key* .
› Enter the password and confirm.

Quick connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› On the mobile device, turn on the hotspot, its visibility, and the option for WPS connection.
› **MENU**> ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* > *Tap WPS quick connection (WPS button)* .

Automatic WPS connection

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* .
› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Manual WPS connection

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS PIN.

The mobile device display will show the WPS PIN for connecting to the Infotainment.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* > ⓘ > *WPS-PIN* .
› Enter the WPS PIN in the Infotainment and confirm.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Automatic connection using the QR code

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* .
› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via QR Code.
› With the mobile device, read the QR code displayed on the Infotainment screen.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Tips for a perfect connection

ⓘ

› Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.
› Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.
› For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.
› If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

Supported connection types

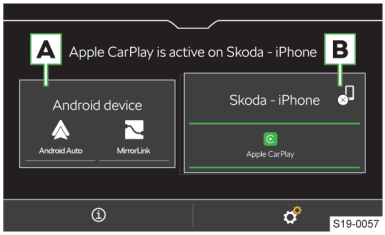
SmartLink supports the following connection types:

› Android Auto
› Apple CarPlay
› MirrorLink

Overview of the SmartLink connection

Menu SmartLink

› Tap **MENU** > SmartLink.



A Previously connected device

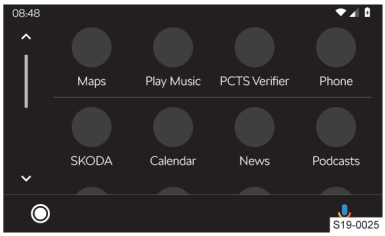
B Currently connected device

ⓘ Display of information about SmartLink

Separation of the active connection

Settings for the SmartLink menu

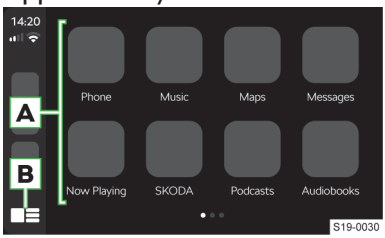
Android Auto



◉ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.

Switch on voice control (Google Assistant)

Apple CarPlay



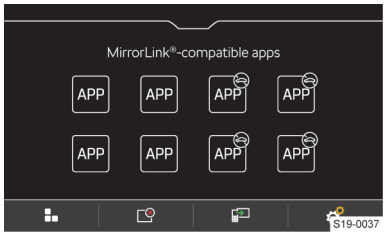
A List of available applications

B Depending on the duration of operation:

› **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay menu

› **Hold:** Switch on Siri voice control

MirrorLink



It is not possible to operate the application while driving

Return to the SmartLink menu

List of running applications

Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices

Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.

✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the respective market.

✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

✓ The device to be connected supports the Android Autoconnection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc.

✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.

✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time with the vehicle stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

✓ The device to be connected supports the Apple CarPlayconnection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc.

✓ Siri voice control is on.

✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

✓ The device to be connected supports the MirrorLink connection.

A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.

✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

Display of control surfaces at the bottom

Display of control surfaces at the top

Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay – Connection using USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Switch on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .

› Select the connection using Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Connect via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

› Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* .

› In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol C.

› Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.

› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay – Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.

✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the infotainment system.

› In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.

› Press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The infotainment system screen displays a connection message with the name of the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.

› Select the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.

› If necessary, confirm the PIN.

› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Disconnect

› In the menu Apple CarPlay, tap on the function area “SKODA”.

› Tap on .

Android Auto – Connection using USB

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Switch on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .

› Select the connection using Android Auto.

Android Auto – Connection via Wi-Fi from the infotainment system

› Tap on **MENU** > SmartLink > ⚙ > *mobile devices*.

› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

› Select the Bluetooth® handsfree profile.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

› From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the symbol.

Android Auto – Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the infotainment system.
- ✓ The minimum Android version is 11.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› On the infotainment system screen, select the Android Auto connection type.

Android Auto – Disconnect

› In the menu Android Auto > tap "SKODA".
› Tap on .

MirrorLink – Connection using USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .
› Select the connection using MirrorLink.

MirrorLink – Disconnect

› In the MirrorLink menu, tap on .
› Tap on .

Change to another device / connection type

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› Tap on **MENU** > .
› Select the desired device or connection type.

Navigation

Navigation announcements

Infotainment route guidance takes place using graphic driving recommendations and navigation announcements.

The navigation announcements are generated by the Infotainment system. Navigation announcement clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

Repeat the last navigation announcement

› Tap on ··· > .

Turn off navigation announcements

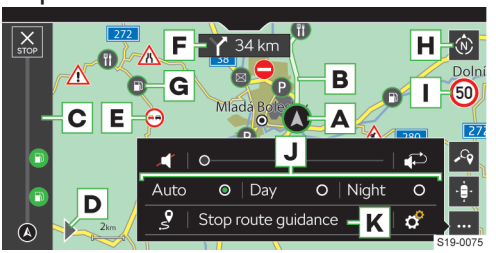
› Tap on ··· > .

Navigation overviews

Display menu

› Tap **MENU** > .

Map overview



- A Vehicle position
- B Route
- C Route view
- STOP End route guidance
- D Display the destination input and route view menu
- E Traffic obstruction
- F Following driving recommendation
- G POI
- H Change map orientation
  - › The 2D map is oriented to the north
  - › 2D map oriented to the direction of travel
  - › 3D map oriented to the direction of travel
- I Road signs for the affected route section
- Find destination
- Centre the map on the vehicle position
- ··· **Display the settings menu**
- Turn off navigation announcements
- Repeat the last navigation announcement
- J Display map in accordance with the following setting:
  - › *Auto* – Map in day / night mode depending on the vehicle lighting currently switched on
  - › *Day* – Map in day mode
  - › *Night* – Map in night mode
- K End route guidance
- Show the entire route
- Settings

Map display in the digital instrument cluster

The map can be displayed in the digital instrument cluster or on the Infotainment display.

› To **change the display** in the menu tap on **navigation** ··· > .

Find destination

› Tap > > .



A Input line

B List of recently searched destinations

C POI categories

› **Tap:** search for the selected category

Show destination list

Enter destination via address / find destination

Select the destination you are looking for

› Enter the details for the destination search.

› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Selecting the destination entered via the address

› Tap on .

A menu for entering the destination via the address is displayed.

› Enter the required information.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

List of stored destinations

› Tap on › .



A List of stored destinations

B Select category of stored destinations

› – Favourites

› – Last destinations

› – Telephone contact destinations

Selecting the stored destination

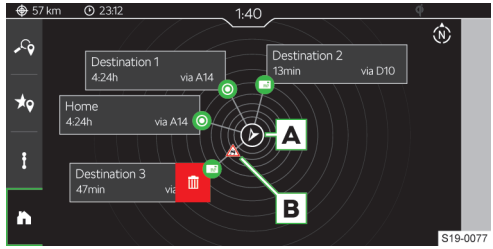
› Select the category of stored destinations.

› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Recommended destinations

› Tap on › .



A North-facing vehicle position

B Traffic obstruction

Delete the recommended destination

The view can display up to 5 recommended destinations in the following categories:

› Destination – home address

› Destination – business address

› Favourites

› Last destinations

Destination alignment depends on the direction in relation to the current vehicle position. The functional surface with the destination displays information about the estimated travel time to the destination.

If the vehicle has active online services and there is a traffic obstruction on the route to the destination, the traffic obstruction icon will be displayed.

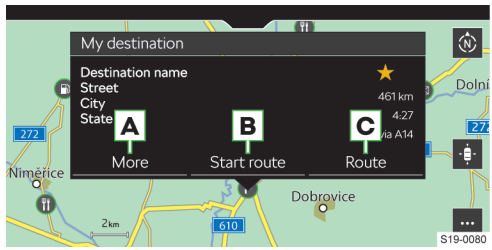
Delete the recommended destination

› Touch the functional surface for the recommended destination and swipe left.

› Tap on .

Selecting destination by tapping the map point

› Tap the desired item or the POI icon in the map.



A Show destination details with the following possible settings:

› ☆ – Save destination as a favourite

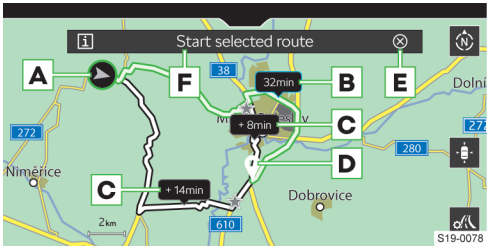
› ★ – Delete favourites

› – Set destination as a starting point for route guidance in demo mode

B Start direct route guidance

C Route calculation

Route calculation



A Current vehicle position

B Proposed fastest route

C Alternative routes

D Destination position

E 15 s time countdown before automatic start of the route guidance

› **Tap:** Interrupt time countdown

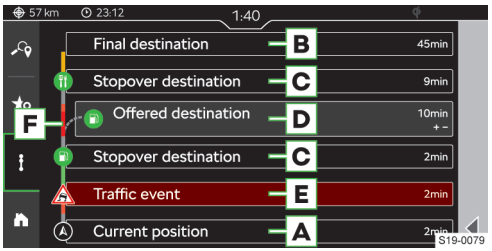
F Start route guidance

Show information on the selected route

Set parameters for route calculation

Route overview

› Tap on .



A Information on current vehicle position

B Final route destination

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:

› *Show on map*

› *Stop route guidance*

C Route stopover

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:

› *Show on map*

› *Add stopover destination*

D Destination provided by Infotainment on the route

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:

› *Show on map*

› *Delete*

E Traffic obstruction on the route

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:

› *Show on map*

› *Avoid*

F Route view

Changing route destinations

In the route overview, it is possible to exchange the destination and the intermediate destinations with each other and thus change their order.

› Hold the line with the desired destination until the functional surface for the destination becomes free.

› Move the destination to the desired position and release the functional surface.

The route is re-calculated.

Overview of traffic density

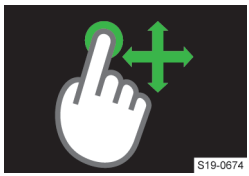
When ŠKODA online services are activated, traffic density information can be displayed in the form of the following colour scale in the route view F.

Low density — — — **High density**

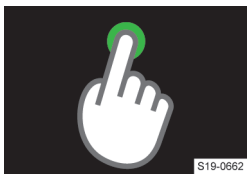
– Traffic density information is not available

Touch operation

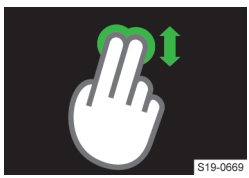
Gesture control



› Move map



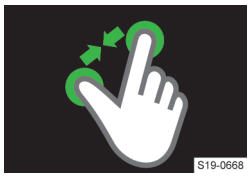
› Enter destination by tapping the map item



› Switch 2D/3D map display



› Zoom into the map



› Zoom out of the map



› Rotate the map

Restriction

Infotainment may give incorrect driving recommendations if the road conditions or the traffic do not match the navigation data. This can lead to the route guidance being carried out using a different route or proposing a change of direction in a one-way street.

Information for updating the navigation data must be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

Settings

Avoiding traffic obstructions

If the function is switched on and the Infotainment receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from online traffic information, the route is recalculated.

Infotainment may suggest a detour to avoid traffic obstructions, depending on the following settings:

› ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Tap on Avoid traffic incidents* .

› Select the desired menu item.

Showing information on the destination / waypoint

The status line displays information on the distance and travel time to the destination, depending on the following setting.

› ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Show information for:* .

› Select the desired menu item for the destination type.

Showing arrival time information in the destination / driving time

The status line displays information on the travel time depending on the following setting.

› ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Time display:* .

› Select the desired menu item.

Switching display of country-specific speed limits on / off

When the function is switched on, the country-specific speed limits are displayed when crossing national borders.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Country information at border crossings*.

Switching the display of road signs on motorways and expressways on / off

When the function is switched on, Infotainment displays traffic and information signs on motorways and expressways.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Information signs on motorways and dual carriageways*.

Switching the fuel warning on / off

When the function is switched on and the fuel supply reaches the reserve area, a warning message appears with the option of going to the nearest petrol station.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Fuel warning*.

Switching the speed limit warning on / off

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Road signs*.

› Set the note type and the value for exceeding the permissible speed.

Settings for trailer operation

To calculate the correct route for trailer operation, switch on trailer inclusion.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Trailer* > *Include trailer*.

Set the maximum speed for trailer operation to correctly calculate the route time.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Trailer* > *Maximum speed for trailers*.

› Set the maximum speed for the trailer.

Set route options

› In the overview of the route destinations, tap on ⚙.

› Select the desired list entries.

Setting navigation announcements

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *navigation announcements*.

› Select and set the desired menu item.

Show preferred POI categories

Favourite POI categories are displayed on the map and provided in the destination search.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Define preferred POI categories*.

› Set favourite categories.

Setting home address

The defined destination of the home address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Enter home address*.

Setting business address

The defined destination of the business address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Enter business address*.

Switching demo mode on / off

In demo mode, the route guidance from the starting point of the demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

When the function is switched on, Infotainment issues a query before the start of route guidance as to whether the route guidance should be carried out in the normal way or in demo mode.

› ··· > ⚙ > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Demo mode* .

Defining the starting point of the demo mode

› Select or locate the desired destination to be the starting point of demo mode.

› In the displayed destination details, tap *More* > .

Updating the navigation database

Information for updating the navigation database must be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

Automatic update

Infotainment automatically carries out an update if the following conditions are met.

✓ The Infotainment Online online services are available.

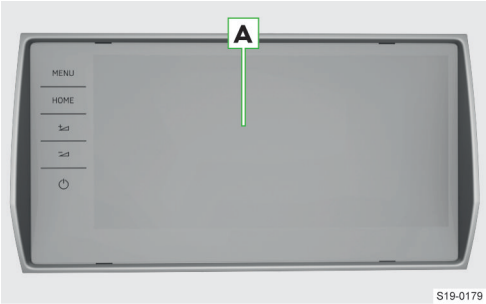
✓ An update of the navigation database for the current vehicle position or route destination is available.

Determining the navigation database version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

Infotainment Columbus

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

MENU All menus

HOME Favourite menus

Increase volume

Reduce volume

Depending on the status:

- **Infotainment switched off**
  - **Tap:** Turn on Infotainment
- **Infotainment switched on**
  - **Tap:** Switch sound off/on
  - **Hold:** Switch off Infotainment

System

Cybernetic security

Updates and system support

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, keeps the systems in your vehicle up to date and provides you with full support in terms of the legal regulations for cybersecurity.

Restriction

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

When the ignition is switched off, some infotainment functions, e.g. driving data will not be available.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > menu:

- Time and date
- Language
- Units
- Restore factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment system sound is set in the **MENU** > menu.

The following settings are available in the menu:

- Equaliser
- Volume ratio
- Individual Infotainment functions volume

  The volume can be adjusted in e.g. one of the following menu items:

  - Volume adjustment of voice commands
  - Maximum volume when the Infotainment system is switched on
  - Speed-dependent volume
  - Muting the Infotainment system with the Parking Aid switched on.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following advanced sound settings are available:

- Space optimisation
- Audio profiles according to genre
- Subwoofer volume

Configuration assistant

The configuration assistant helps you set up some functions of the Infotainment system.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed when the ignition is switched on if there are at least two menu items that have not been set up after the Infotainment system is switched on.

- To **switch off the automatic display** when the configuration assistant is displayed, tap *Do not show again*.
- For **manual display** tap **MENU** > > *Configuration assistant*.

Set up menu HOME

› To **display another page** of the HOME menu, press the screen with two fingers and drag it to the left or right.

To **add the preferred menu**, proceed as follows:

› Tap on an empty functional surface.

Or:

› Press and hold an occupied functional surface and then tap on an empty functional area.
› Select a menu with the desired dimension of the functional surface.
› Tap on ✕ to exit edit mode.

To **remove the preferred menu**, proceed as follows:

› Press an occupied functional surface.
› Tap on 🗑.
› Tap on ✕ to exit edit mode.

Set up menu MENU

The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows:

› Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.
› Move the functional surface to a different position.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding

If the infotainment does not respond, restart it as follows:

› Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend you have the system updated by a specialist garage..

The system update ensures that the Infotainment functions optimally.

Determine system version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

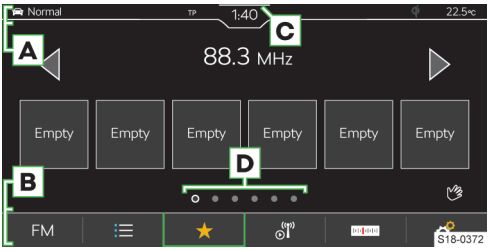
System update

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information* > *Update software* .
› Follow the instructions on the screen.

ⓘ The information regarding the completed system update is displayed in the list of information messages.

Screen

Overview



A Status bar
B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
C Display of the control centre
D Other pages of the menu

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of screen damage!
› The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

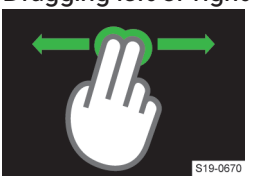
The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Dragging up or down with two fingers



› Quickly review the list of phone contacts
› Switch 2D/3D map display

Dragging left or right with two fingers



› Display next page of the HOME menu

Pulling apart with two fingers



› Enlarge image
› Zoom into the map

Pulling together with two fingers



- Minimize image
- Zoom out of the map

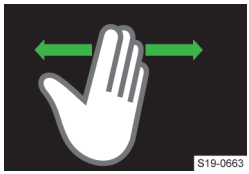
Turn two fingers



- Rotate image
- Rotate the map

Contactless gesture control

The Infotainment menus marked with the symbol can be controlled by hand gestures.



- Gesture control is achieved by slowly moving the hand back and forth approximately 8 cm above the lower edge of the screen.

Depending on the setting, a recognized gesture can be confirmed acoustically and animated.

Displaying operation help

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Screen*:

- Brightness level of the screen
- Switch off the screen
- Display the time
- Confirmation sounds and animations

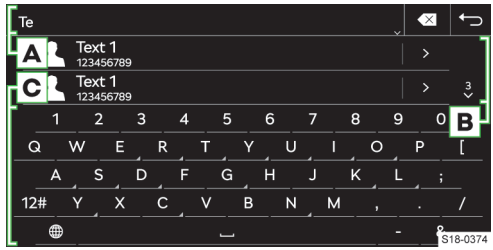
Keypad

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Keyboard types:

- Alphanumeric
- Numeric
- Keyboard for input
- Keyboard for search



Keypad example

A Input line

- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters one after the other
- Display functional surfaces for moving the cursor in the input line
  - Move cursor to the left
  - Move cursor to the right

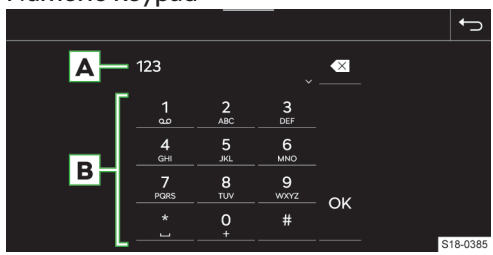
B Entries found

- Show list

C Keypad functional surfaces

- Change to lowercase
- Switch to first having an upper-case letter, followed by lower-case letters
- Switch to uppercase
- **ABC/АБВ** Switch to the language keypad
- **12#** Switch to the numeric and character keypad
- **1/2/2/2**Switch to other character variants
- Show additional keyboard languages
- Insert spaces
- The next line
- **Hold:** Show more character variants
- Show password
- OK Confirm the entered characters

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line

- Delete characters before the cursor

› **Tap:** delete the last character
› **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

› OK Confirm the entered characters

If it is possible depending on the context, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a function area with the number.

Operation

The infotainment keyboard is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keyboard will be **displayed automatically** when the infotainment prompts for characters.

Find

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap ⌄.

Show additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› Tap ⊕ or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

› Press and hold the character with the A symbol.
› Select the desired symbol.

Setting up additional keyboard languages

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Additional keypad languages*.

Voice control

Functionality

Voice control principle

Voice control works according to the principle of dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user says a voice command. The Infotainment system responds or executes the voice command.

Advanced voice control

The vehicle's advanced voice control enables the vehicle functions to be searched and operated online.

Advanced voice control understands fluent whole sentences. You do not need to use set commands or phrases.

The advanced voice control can, for example, search for special destinations or dictate SMS messages if the connected telephone makes this possible.

This function allows you to combine the search in the online and offline data of the Infotainment. The transition between online and offline search is seamless and imperceptible to the user.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on
✓ Infotainment switched on

Operating conditions for advanced voice control

To use the advanced voice control, the following conditions must also be met:

✓ The vehicle supports the function.
✓ The vehicle has Infotainment and functions that can be controlled by the advanced voice control.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.
✓ The level of protection of personal data is set to *Share my position*.

Requirement for recognition of the activation command

✓ Activated menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Voice control* > *Active*

Operation

Switch on voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Say the activation command **"OK Laura"**.

After switching on, the icon is displayed in the status bar.

Enter voice command

› Speak a voice command with voice control switched on.

During recognition of the voice command, the icon is displayed.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays the message. During the message, the icon is displayed.

After the execution of the voice command, voice control is switched off.

Correcting a voice command

› During voice command input, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"pause"**.

Resuming stopped voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Tap on in the Infotainment screen.

Stopping the played back message

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"cancel"** during voice command input.

Restriction

For some Infotainment languages, there is no voice control available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Voice control*:

› Confirmation tones

› Enable/disable use of the activation word.

Self-help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say **"Help"**.

The **"Help"** voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying the help

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

Or:

› If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say **"overview"**.

Switch example voice commands display on / off

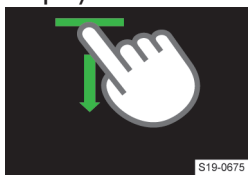
The system offers the option of displaying example voice commands after switching on the voice control in the Infotainment screen.

› To **turn** **MENU** > > *voice control* on/off, tap > *Show in Infotainment system*.

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

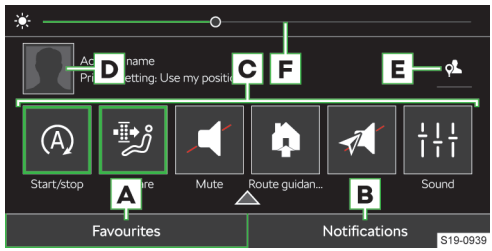
› Tap on ▲.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



- **A** Display and administration of functional surfaces of preferred features
- **B** Display list of informational messages
- **C** Preferred functions
- **D** Display user account management
- **E** Setting the personal data protection level
- **F** Setting the instrument and key illumination

Set functional areas of preferred features

› To **display** editing mode hold any function surface of the preferred feature.

› To **add** the preferred feature, move the desired feature from the top of the screen to the functional surface at the bottom of the screen.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ✕.

Radio

Overview

Display menu

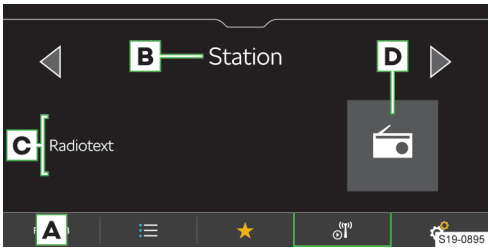
› Tap **MENU** > .

Analogue and digital radio player

› Tap A and select the desired frequency range.

› Tap ⁝≡ and search for or select the desired station.

› Tap on .



A Select source

B Station name

C Information about the broadcast content

D Station logos

⁝≡ List of available stations

★ Show favourites

Information about the station

Search stations manually (valid for AM and FM)

Settings

List of available analogue and digital radio stations

› Tap on ⁝≡.

Played station

★ Station stored on the presets

TP A traffic radio station is set

The DAB transmitter emits images which are displayed in the information to the station

Manual update of the station list

In the station list, information about the programme type and the channel identification of the regional channel can be displayed.

Web radio player

› A tap and select a web radio station.

› Tap and search or select web radio.

› Tap on .



A Select source

B Station name

C Information about the broadcast content

D Station logos

List of web radio and podcasts

★ Show favourites

Information about the programme as well as the broadcast content of the web radio

Settings

Podcast player

› Tap A and select an online radio station.

› Tap and search for or select the desired pocast.

› Tap .



A Select source

B Podcast name

C Information about the broadcast content

D Podcast logo with the symbol

Tap: Start playback

Tap: Pause

Tap: Go back 15 secs

Tap: Go forward 15 secs

View episodes of the podcast being played

List of web radio stations and podcasts

★ Show favourites

Show information about the podcast

Settings

List of web radio stations and podcasts

› Tap on .



Search for web radio stations and podcasts

Recently played web radio stations and podcasts

100 most popular web radio stations depending on the Infotainment language that has been set

Go to podcasts and select

Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected country

Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected language

Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected genre

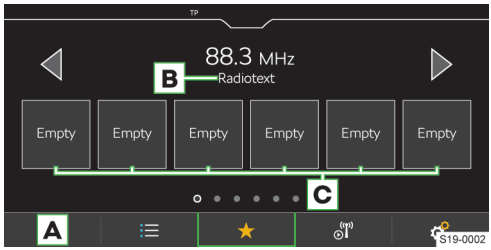
See list of related podcasts based on content listened to

See list of related podcasts based on content listened to

The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon .

List of favourite stations and podcasts

› In the menu Radio, tap on ★.



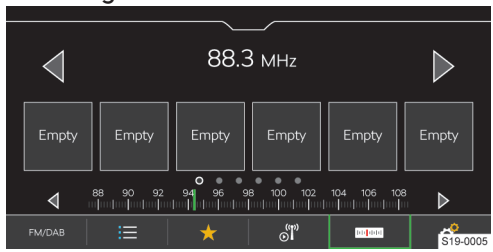
A Select source

B Radio text

C Station buttons for favourite stations and podcasts

Operation

Selecting a station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic play** > press *Scan* .

› To **stop automatic play**, tap SCAN.

Finding stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› To display the button for FM station, switch on > *Advanced settings* > *Show stations:* > *FM*.

› Tap in the Radio menu.

› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Restriction

› Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

› Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

› In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

› The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
› Tap the desired preset button.

Save channels from the list of web radio stations and podcasts

Valid for web radio stations and podcasts.

› Select a web radio station as the playback source.
› Tap on .
› Go to the desired web radio station or podcast and select it.
› Hold the line with the name of the desired station or podcast.
› Tap the desired preset button.

With podcasts, it is not possible to save the individual episodes.

Deleting favourites

› In the menu **Radio** > *Delete memory entries* .
› To delete **a** station button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** station buttons for preferred stations *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Functional surfaces ◁ ▷ for analogue and digital radios

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** menu is set as follows:

› In the menu **Radio** > *Arrow buttons:* .
› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

Functional areas ◁ ▷ for web radio stations and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** menu is set as follows:

› In the menu **Radio** > *Arrow buttons:* .
› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station keys or the last web stations and podcasts listened to.

Switch on/switch off traffic reception (TP) for stations

Applies to FM and DAB frequency range.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Traffic program (TP)* .

Assign station logo from the Infotainment memory

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option of assigning logos, which are stored in the Infotainment memory, to the stations.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Station logos* .
› Select the desired station and logo.

Switching off the station logo display

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Station logos* .
› To select the desired station. *No station logo* .

Activating / deactivating automatic station logo assignment

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Automatic selection of station logos* .

Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and the station buttons are displayed, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Radio text* .

Regional FM station logo

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The infotainment system provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Region for station logo:*.
› Choose country.

Switching additional announcements of the DAB station on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. Weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Additional DAB announcements* .

Switch RDS on / off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Radio Radio Data System (RDS)* .

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available:

› Traffic programme (TP)

› Radio text
› RDS Regional
› Automatic frequency change (AF)
› Regional station logo

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Tap Switch to a similar station if weak reception* .

Display FM-/DAB-stations or FM-stations in the list of available stations

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Depending on the following setting, the stations of the selected frequency range are displayed in the list of available stations.

› In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Station display:* .
› Select one of the following menu items:
› *FM/DAB* – the list shows available FM- and DAB stations.
› *FM* – the list shows available FM stations.

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

› To adjust the sound quality, tap on > Audio quality: in the **Radio** main menu. *Audio quality:* .
› Choose low or high quality.

The quality you set affects the amount of data used in the data connection.

Quality also depends on the speed and availability of the data connection.

If playback failure occur, reduce the sound quality.

Media

What you should be mindful of

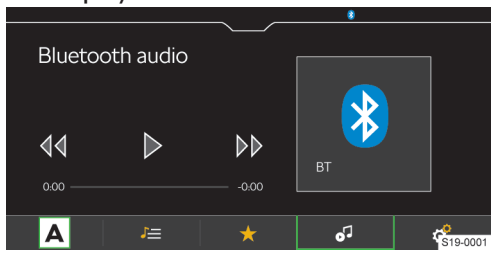
› Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
› When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
› When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
› The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

Display menu

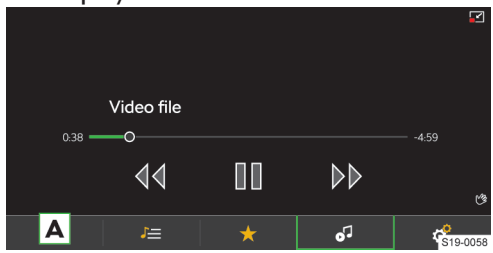
› Tap on **MENU** > ♫.

Music player



A Choose source
Manage files / multimedia database
★ Show favourites
Details about the track being played
Settings

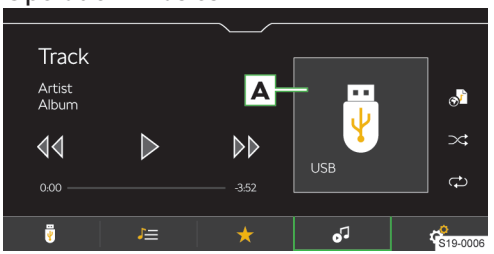
Video player



A Select source
Manage files / multimedia database
★ Show favourites
Show video
Shrink image display
Enlarge the image display
Settings

Player controls

Operation - Basics



A Album image / symbol of the connected source
› **Tap:** list available albums

▷ **Tap:** Start playback

▯▯ **Tap:** Pause

⏮ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song

⏮ **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap:** to play the current title from the beginning

⏮ **Hold:** fast rewind within the track

⏭ **Tap:** play the next track

⏭ **Hold:** fast forward within the track

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

🔁 Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track

🔁 Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder

🔀 Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder

Save the played track in the playlist "*My playlist*"

"My playlist" management

› To **display the playlist**, tap ♫☰ › 🅰 › ✋ › .

› To **manage the playlist** tap ✎ in the displayed playlist.

The following activities can be carried out in playlist management:

› Control playback

› Change the order of a title in the list by holding and moving ☰ to the desired position.

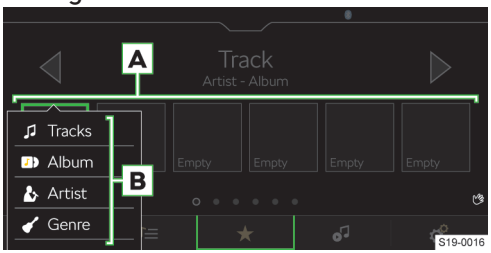
› Delete track by tapping on 🗑.

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used.

Settings

Manage favourites



› To **save**, hold the desired functional area for favourites A.

› Choose one of the available list entries B.

› To **Clear**, in the menu **media** ⚙ › tap on *Manage favourites* .

› To delete **a favourite**, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all favourites** tap on *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu ⚙ › and tap on *Traffic program (TP)* .

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x, 3.x or higher with USB USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that support the USB Mass Storage protocol	
		MTP	Devices having an Android operating system, which support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices running the iOS operating system and iAP2 protocol	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2
MPEG 2 Layer 2	
MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3
MPEG 2 Layer 3	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	
Windows Media Audio 7	wma
Windows Media Audio 8	
Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	
Windows Media Audio 9.2	
Windows Media Audio 10	

Codec type	File extension
AAC LC	aac m4a
AAC-HE	
AAC-HEv2	
ALAC	m4a
OGG-Vorbis	ogg
FLAC	flac
PCM	wav
RIFF	
SBC	-
Monkey's	ape
OPUS	OPUS

Files that are protected by DRM and iTunes® technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mpv
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov
MJPEG	
MPEG 4 (ISO)	
Xvid	Xvid
WMV9	wmv asf

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

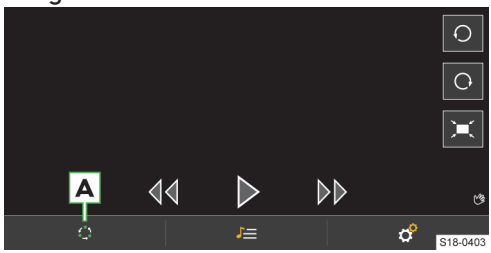
Images

Overview

Display menu

› Tap **MENU** > .

Image viewer



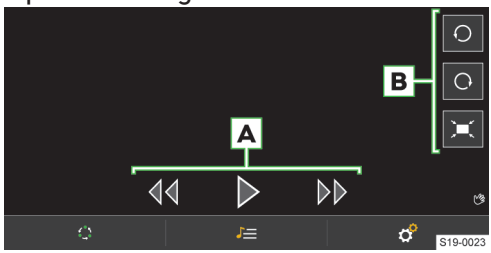
A Select source

Manage files

Settings

Operation

Operation using functional areas



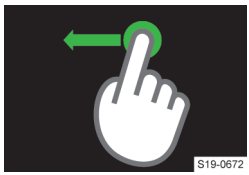
A View images

- Show the next image
- Show the previous image
- Start slideshow
- Stop slideshow

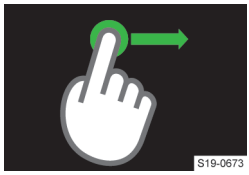
B View image

- Turn left
- Turn right
- Show in output size

Gesture control



› Display of the next image



› Display the previous image



› Increase the image size



› Reduce the image size



› Rotate by 90 °

Settings

The following Infotainment functions are set in the MENU > > menu:

- Display image size
- Display image duration during the slideshow
- Slideshow repeat

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x, 3.x or higher with USB USB 2.x support	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
		HDD (without special software)	

Supported files

Codec type	File extension	Max. resolution [Mpx]
BMP	bmp	4
JPG; JPEG	jpg; jpeg	4 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

The maximum supported image size is 20 MB.

Mobile device management

Cybernetic security

Your vehicle contains components that are used to exchange information and data between the vehicle and the connected mobile devices or the Internet.

These components have security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and vehicle functions. The following guidelines must therefore be observed:

› Use only media carriers, Bluetooth® devices and mobile devices that contain no harmful data or malware.
› Regularly update the software provided by ŠKODA AUTO.

We recommend having the system software and components updated by a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
Malware in the vehicle can influence and deactivate certain vehicle functions, or take over the controls of these where applicable.
› If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, immediately reduce speed or stop the vehicle.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

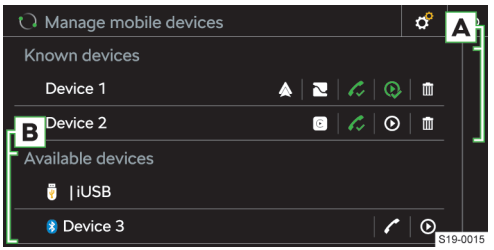
Malware in the vehicle may gain unauthorised access to the information and data of the vehicle, and on occasion, to connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management

› Tap on **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices*.



A Connected / Previously connected devices
B Available devices

The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® “hands-free profile”
The device is connected via the Bluetooth®“hands-free profile”
The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile
The device is connected via the Bluetooth® audio profile
Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**
The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Android Auto
The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Apple CarPlay
The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via MirrorLink

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee full Bluetooth® compatibility with infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version and the implementation of the Bluetooth® protocols on the part of the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices

Applications can be installed in external devices making it possible to display additional information on the Infotainment screen or to operate Infotainment.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may

not work in all external devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper function.

The range of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the Infotainment model, vehicle and region.

Information about ŠKODAapplications

Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link:

http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.

› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found by tapping on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Device name:* .

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* .

› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously connected mobile device

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* .

› Select the desired device from the list of **previously connected devices**.

› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.

› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types:

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

› Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.

› Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

Overview

Display menu

› Tap **MENU** > ✆.

ⓘ If the menu **phone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.



A Name of the connected telephone

› **Tap:** Show list of previously connected phones

B Name of telephone service providers

› If the symbol ▷ is displayed in front of the name, roaming is active.

C Preset buttons for preferred contacts

Change the main telephone with the additional telephone

Enter telephone number

Contact list

Text messages / emails

Call lists

Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Visibility*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ▦.

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

ⓘ The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter combination DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **phone** menu, tap on 📖.

› To **search** within the list, tap on *Enter contact* .

› Enter the details you wish to find.

› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Phone** menu, tap on ▦ > ⌾.

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

End connection / reject incoming call / end call
Answer an incoming call / return to the held call
🔇/🔊 Switch the ringer off / on
Hold a call
🎤/🎤 Switch the microphone off / on
Show details of the caller
Reject an incoming call using an SMS message
Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the telephone**, go to **telephone** in the menu and tap on ⚙ > *speakerphone* .

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap 🔊.

Conference call

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping ✓ .

› To **start** a conference call, tap on 👤+👥.

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context:

Hold the conference call and leave temporarily
The conference will continue in the background
Return to the held conference call
🎤/🎤 Switch the microphone off / on
End conference call
Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected:

Show details of the conference call participants
End conversation with the conference call participant
Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Send a text message

› In the **Telephone** ✉ > ✉ menu, tap *Messages* > ✎ *New SMS* .

› Write a text message and confirm; a view of the message is displayed.

The message can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the message.

› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.

› *Tap on Send* .

Display received text messages

› In the **Telephone** ✉ > ✉ menu, tap *Messages* > ✉ or ✉.

› Messages that are received are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following setting:

To **switch the display of messages in a conversation on or off**, tap in the **Phone** ⚙ >menu*Show messages as conversation* .

› To **switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new message **on or off**, tap in the **Phone** ⚙ >menu *New message notifications* .

ⓘ Infotainment offers the possibility to read the text message (context-dependent) by means of the generated Infotainment voice if 💬 is tapped.

Send e-mails

› In the **Telephone** ✉ > ✉ menu, tap *Emails* > ✎ *New emails* .
› Write an e-mail and confirm that an e-mail is displayed.

The text can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the email.
› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.
› Enter the subject of the e-mail.
› *Tap on Send* .

Show received e-mails

› In the **Telephone** ✉ > ✉ menu, tap *Emails* > ✉.
› Select the desired e-mail.
› To **switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new email **on or off**, tap in the **Phone** ⚙ >menu *New message notifications* .

Settings for Infotainment telephone functions

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment:

› **No telephone**– The telephone is connected as the main telephone.
› **One telephone**– The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.
› **Two telephones**– Select the telephone to be replaced.
› To **switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on 📱 in the **Phone** menu.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found in menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Device name:* .

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connecting the Infotainment system to an unpaired telephone – no telephone is connected

› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > ✓.
› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Connecting Infotainment to a non-paired telephone – another telephone is connected

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

› If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* .

Or:

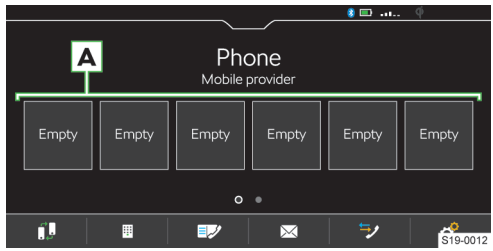
› **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone* .
› Select the desired device from the list of **previously connected devices**.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

› If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts



› To **save** the desired preset button, hold A.
› Select a contact from the displayed list.
› If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.
› To **display the menu for deletion,** go to the **phone** menu ⚙ >and tap on *Manage favourites* .
› To delete **one** preset, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** station buttons, tap *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Import telephone contacts
After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 5000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts
When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** > menu *tap on Import contacts* .

Sort contacts in the phone book
› In the **Telephone** >menu *Sort by:* Tap and select the sorting type.

Ringtone
Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› For **setting the Infotainment ringtone** in the **phone** >menu *select the ringtone* .

› Select the ringtone.

Number for the voice mailbox
› For **setting the voice mailbox number** in the **phone** > menu *Mailbox number:* .

› Enter the voice mailbox number.

Turn the graphic notice regarding receiving a new message/email on or off
If the function is activated, when a new message / e-mail is received, the symbol of a new message is displayed in the status bar and in the functional surface for the messages.

› In the **Telephone** >menu *New message notifications* .

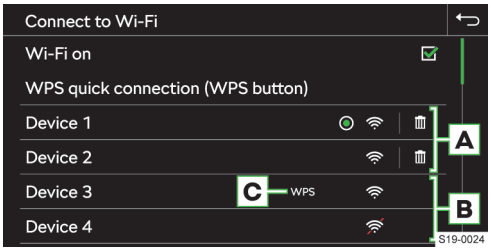
Wi-Fi

Functionality
The Wi-Fi can be used for the internet connection or for the SmartLinkConnection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

Overview of available hotspots
Display available hotspots
› Tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



A Previously connected hotspots

B Available hotspots

C The hotspot supports the WPS connection

Currently connected hotspot

Delete information about the hotspot connection

Wi-Fi signal strength of the hotspot

The Wi-Fi signal from the hotspot is not available

Function restriction
The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection
In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings
Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot
› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.

› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.

› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network key*.

› Confirm the connection.

Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* > *WiFi active* switch on
› Select the desired hotspot in the list of available hotspots.
› Enter the password for connecting to mobile devices.

ⓘ Infotainment stores passwords for previously connected hotspots.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Activate/deactivate data transfer between the Infotainment and the connected device

› To turn data transmission on or off, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices* > ⚙.

Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.
› Enter the name and confirm.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Network key* .
› Enter the password and confirm.

Quick connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› On the mobile device, turn on the hotspot, its visibility, and the option for WPS connection.
› **MENU**> ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *WLAN:* > *Tap WPS quick connection (WPS button)* .

Automatic WPS connection

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* .
› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Manual WPS connection

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS PIN.

The mobile device display will show the WPS PIN for connecting to the Infotainment.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* > ⓘ > *WPS-PIN* .
› Enter the WPS PIN in the Infotainment and confirm.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Automatic connection using the QR code

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Tap quick connection with infotainment system* .
› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via QR Code.
› With the mobile device, read the QR code displayed on the Infotainment screen.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Tips for a perfect connection

ⓘ

› Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.
› Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.
› For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.
› If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

Supported connection types

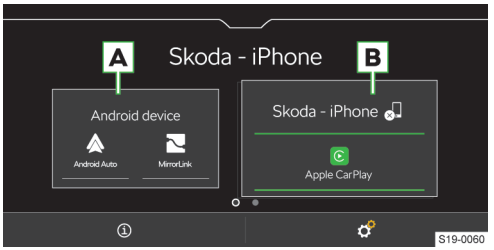
SmartLink supports the following connection types:

› Android Auto
› Apple CarPlay
› MirrorLink

Overview of the SmartLinkconnection

Display menu

› Tap **MENU** > SmartLink.



A Previously connected device

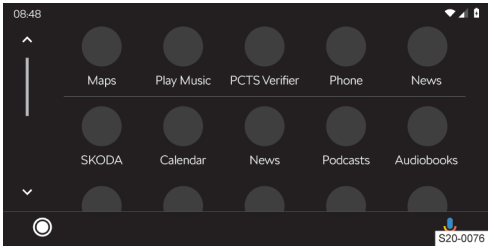
B Currently connection device

ⓘ Display information about SmartLink

Disconnection of the active connection

Settings in SmartLink menu

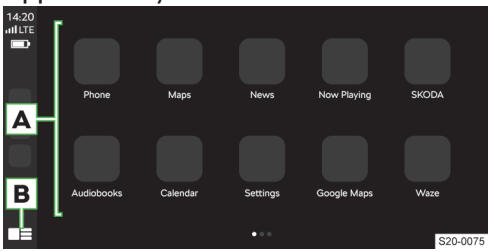
Android Auto



◉ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.

Turn on voice control (Google Assistant)

Apple CarPlay



A List of available applications

B Depending on the duration of operation:

- **Tap:** Return to the menu Apple CarPlay
- **Hold:** Turn on Siri voice control

MirrorLink



It is not possible to operate the application while driving

Return to the menu SmartLink

List of running applications

Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices

Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.

✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the respective market.

✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

✓ The device to be connected supports the Android Autoconnection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc.

✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.

✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time with the vehicle stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

✓ The device to be connected supports the Apple CarPlayconnection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc.

✓ Siri voice control is on.

✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

✓ The device to be connected supports the MirrorLink connection.

A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.

✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

Display of control surfaces at the bottom

Display of control surfaces at the top

Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay – Connection using USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .
› Select the connection using Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Connect via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

› Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* .
› In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol C.
› Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay – Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the infotainment system.

› In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.
› Press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The infotainment system screen displays a connection message with the name of the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Disconnect

› In the menu Apple CarPlay, tap on the function area “SKODA”.
› Tap on .

Android Auto – Connection using USB

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

✓ The minimum Android version is 6.

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .
› Select the connection using Android Auto.

Android Auto – Connection via Wi-Fi from the infotainment system

› Tap on **MENU** > SmartLink > ⚙ > *mobile devices*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the Bluetooth® handsfree profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
› From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the symbol.

Android Auto – Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following condition must be met:

- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the infotainment system.
- ✓ The minimum Android version is 11.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the infotainment system Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› On the infotainment system screen, select the Android Auto connection type.

Android Auto – Disconnect

› In the menu Android Auto > tap "SKODA".
› Tap on .

MirrorLink – Connection using USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Switch on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable .
› Select the connection using MirrorLink.

MirrorLink – Disconnect

› In the MirrorLink menu, tap on .
› Tap on .

Change to another device / connection type

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› Tap on **MENU** > .
› Select the desired device or connection type.

Navigation

Navigation announcements

Infotainment route guidance takes place using graphic driving recommendations and navigation announcements.

The navigation announcements are generated by the Infotainment system. Navigation announcement clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

Repeat the last navigation announcement

› Tap on ··· > .

Turn off navigation announcements

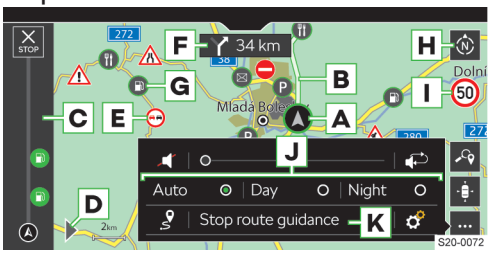
› Tap on ··· > .

Navigation overviews

Display menu

› Tap **MENU** > .

Map overview



- A Vehicle position
- B Route
- C Route view
- STOP End route guidance
- D Display the destination input and route view menu
- E Traffic obstruction
- F Following driving recommendation
- G POI
- H Change map orientation
  - › The 2D map is oriented to the north
  - › 2D map oriented to the direction of travel
  - › 3D map oriented to the direction of travel
- I Road signs for the affected route section
- Find destination
- Centre the map on the vehicle position
- ··· **Display the settings menu**
- Turn off navigation announcements
- Repeat the last navigation announcement
- Show the default map
- J Display map in accordance with the following setting:
  - › *Auto* – Map in day / night mode depending on the vehicle lighting currently switched on
  - › *Day* – Map in day mode
  - › *Night* – Map in night mode
- Show the entire route
- K End route guidance
- Settings

Find destination

› Tap > > .



A Input line

B List of recently searched destinations

C POI categories

› **Tap:** search for the selected category

Show destination list

Enter destination via address / find destination

Select the destination you are looking for

› Enter the details for the destination search.

› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Selecting the destination entered via the address

› Tap on .

A menu for entering the destination via the address is displayed.

› Enter the required information.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

List of stored destinations

› Tap on › .



A List of stored destinations

B Select category of stored destinations

› – Favourites

› – Last destinations

› – Telephone contact destinations

Selecting the stored destination

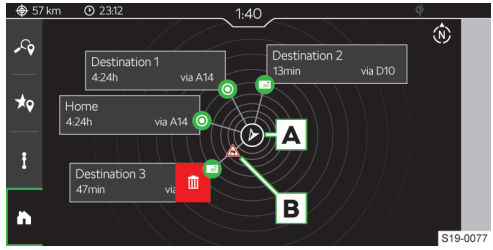
› Select the category of stored destinations.

› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Recommended destinations

› Tap on › .



A North-facing vehicle position

B Traffic obstruction

Delete the recommended destination

The view can display up to 5 recommended destinations in the following categories:

› Destination – home address

› Destination – business address

› Favourites

› Last destinations

Destination alignment depends on the direction in relation to the current vehicle position. The functional surface with the destination displays information about the estimated travel time to the destination.

If the vehicle has active online services and there is a traffic obstruction on the route to the destination, the traffic obstruction icon will be displayed.

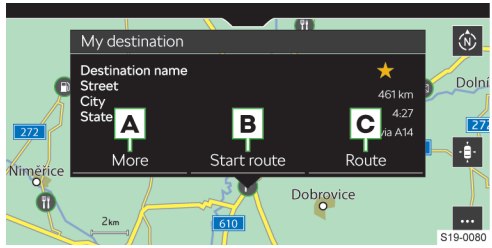
Delete the recommended destination

› Touch the functional surface for the recommended destination and swipe left.

› Tap on .

Selecting destination by tapping the map point

› Tap the desired item or the POI icon in the map.



A Show destination details with the following possible settings:

› ☆ – Save destination as a favourite

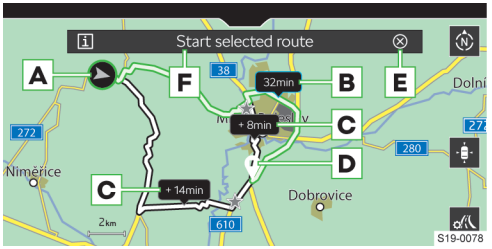
› ★ – Delete favourites

› – Set destination as a starting point for route guidance in demo mode

B Start direct route guidance

C Route calculation

Route calculation



A Current vehicle position

B Proposed fastest route

C Alternative routes

D Destination position

E 15 s time countdown before automatic start of the route guidance

› **Tap:** Interrupt time countdown

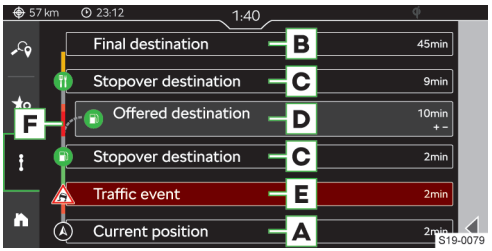
F Start route guidance

Show information on the selected route

Set parameters for route calculation

Route overview

› Tap on ▸ › ⁞.



A Information on current vehicle position

B Final route destination

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:

› *Show on map*

› *Stop route guidance*

C Route stopover

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:

› *Show on map*

› *Add stopover destination*

D Destination provided by Infotainment on the route

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:

› *Show on map*

› *Delete*

E Traffic obstruction on the route

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:

› *Show on map*

› *Avoid*

F Route view

Changing route destinations

In the route overview, it is possible to exchange the destination and the intermediate destinations with each other and thus change their order.

› Hold the line with the desired destination until the functional surface for the destination becomes free.

› Move the destination to the desired position and release the functional surface.

The route is re-calculated.

Overview of traffic density

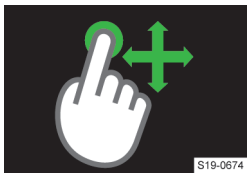
When ŠKODA online services are activated, traffic density information can be displayed in the form of the following colour scale in the route view **F**.

Low density — — — **High density**

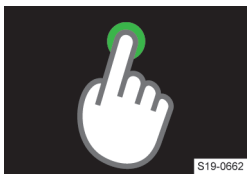
— Traffic density information is not available

Touch operation

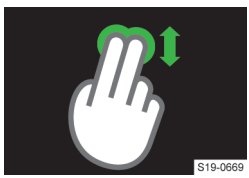
Gesture control



› Move map



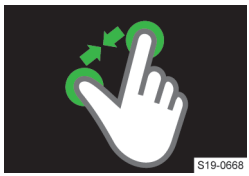
› Enter destination by tapping the map item



› Switch 2D/3D map display



› Zoom into the map



› Zoom out of the map



› Rotate the map

Limitation

Infotainment may give incorrect driving recommendations if the road conditions or the traffic do not match the navigation data. This can lead to the route guidance being carried out using a different route or proposing a change of direction in a one-way street.

Information for updating the navigation data must be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

Settings

Avoiding traffic obstructions

If the function is switched on and the Infotainment receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from online traffic information, the route is recalculated.

Infotainment may suggest a detour to avoid traffic obstructions, depending on the following settings:

› ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Tap on Avoid traffic incidents* .

› Select the desired menu item.

Showing information on the destination / waypoint

The status line displays information on the distance and travel time to the destination, depending on the following setting.

› ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Show information for:* .

› Select the desired menu item for the destination type.

Showing arrival time information in the destination / driving time

The status line displays information on the travel time depending on the following setting.

› ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Time display:* .

› Select the desired menu item.

Switching display of country-specific speed limits on / off

When the function is switched on, the country-specific speed limits are displayed when crossing national borders.

› Tap ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Country information at border crossings*.

Switching the display of road signs on motorways and expressways on / off

When the function is switched on, Infotainment displays traffic and information signs on motorways and expressways.

› Tap ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Information signs on motorways and dual carriageways*.

Switching the fuel warning on / off

When the function is switched on and the fuel supply reaches the reserve area, a warning message appears with the option of going to the nearest petrol station.

› Tap ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Fuel warning*.

Switching the speed limit warning on / off

› Tap ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Road signs*.

› Set the note type and the value for exceeding the permissible speed.

Settings for trailer operation

To calculate the correct route for trailer operation, switch on trailer inclusion.

› Tap ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Trailer* > *Include trailer*.

Set the maximum speed for trailer operation to correctly calculate the route time.

› Tap ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Trailer* > *Maximum speed for trailers*.

› Set the maximum speed for the trailer.

Set route options

› In the overview of the route destinations, tap on .

› Select the desired list entries.

Setting navigation announcements

› Tap ··· > > *navigation announcements*.

› Select and set the desired menu item.

Show preferred POI categories

Favourite POI categories are displayed on the map and provided in the destination search.

› Tap ··· > > *Basic functions* > *Define preferred POI categories*.

› Set favourite categories.

Setting home address

The defined destination of the home address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Enter home address*.

Setting business address

The defined destination of the business address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Enter business address*.

Switching demo mode on / off

In demo mode, the route guidance from the starting point of the demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

When the function is switched on, Infotainment issues a query before the start of route guidance as to whether the route guidance should be carried out in the normal way or in demo mode.

› ··· > ⚙ > *Tap on Basic functions* > *Demo mode* .

Defining the starting point of the demo mode

› Select or locate the desired destination to be the starting point of demo mode.

› In the displayed destination details, tap *More* > .

Updating the navigation database

Information for updating the navigation database must be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

Automatic update

Infotainment automatically carries out an update if the following conditions are met.

✓ The Infotainment Online online services are available.

✓ An update of the navigation database for the current vehicle position or route destination is available.

Determining the navigation database version

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

Online Services

ŠKODA Connect

Regulations

The rights and obligations of the Parties with respect to the provision of these services are governed by a separate agreement. Current legal documents regarding the ŠKODA Connect services are available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal as well as in the MyŠKODA application.

Functionality

The ŠKODA Connect services allow you to connect the vehicle to the online world. They thus represent an extension of the vehicle and Infotainment functions.

The ŠKODA Connect services are not included in the equipment of the vehicle. These will be published separately on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, in the MyŠKODA application or in Infotainment, if Infotainment allows this.

The offer of ŠKODA Connect services depends on the type of vehicle and its trim level, Infotainment and country.

ŠKODA Connect website

The ŠKODA Connect website contains e.g. the current information on the ŠKODA Connect services, the reference to the ŠKODA Connect Portal or the option to download the MyŠKODA application.

The website is opened after reading the following QR code or the reference:

http://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect

ŠKODA Connect Portal website

The ŠKODA Connect Portal website enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connect services, service management or remote access to the vehicle.

The website is opened after reading the following QR code or the reference:

http://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal

Requirements

Terms of use of the ŠKODA Connect services

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

- ✓ A user is registered in the vehicle.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ A registered user is authorized to use the ŠKODA Connect services.
- ✓ The protection level set for sending personal data enables the use of the ŠKODA Connect services.

Terms of use of the ŠKODA Connect services

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

- ✓ A main user is registered in the vehicle.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ A currently logged in user is authorized to use the ŠKODA Connect services.
- ✓ The protection level set for sending personal data enables the use of the ŠKODA Connect services.

Availability of the ŠKODA Connect services

Availability depends on the following conditions:

- › Cellular networks through which the connection to the ŠKODA Connect services is ensured are available.
  - › The availability, functioning, connection speed and technology used in the mobile network can be different in the respective countries and are dependent on the mobile network operator.
  - › In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.
- › The ŠKODA Connect services are available for your vehicle, infotainment and the respective country.
  - › The availability can be checked on the following ŠKODA Connect website:

http://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect-availability

Availability status of the ŠKODA Connect services

The availability of the services is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

- **White** – the ŠKODA Connect services are available.
- **Grey** – the ŠKODA Connect services are not available.

MyŠKODA application

Functionality

MyŠKODA application

The MyŠKODA application enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connect services or remote access to the vehicle.

The application can be downloaded to the mobile device after scanning the following QR code or link:

http://go.skoda.eu/skodaconnectapp

Requirements

- ✓ The user has one ŠKODA ID account linked to the vehicle.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active in the vehicle.

User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services

Functionality

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

User registration will provide you with a ŠKODA ID user account that can be used in all ŠKODA applications and services.

User registration for the ŠKODA Connect services can be done at the following locations.

- ŠKODA Connect Portal website
- MyŠKODA application

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

User registration will provide you with a ŠKODA ID user account that can be used in all ŠKODA applications and services.

User registration for the ŠKODA Connect services can be done at the following locations.

- ŠKODA Connect Portal website
- MyŠKODA application
- Infotainment, if it supports this function

When registering, create an S-PIN.
You will need the S-PIN to register for certain ŠKODA Connect services as well as to register for the protected user account.

Settings

User registration

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

User registration and activation of online services ŠKODA Connect take place on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal or in the application MyŠKODA.

To complete registration, access to the e-mail box entered during registration is required.

Activation of online services

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

In order to activate ŠKODA Connect online services, proceed as follows:

- Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
- Select the following menu:

MENU > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)* > *Registration*

- Enter and confirm the registration PIN you have received during user and vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portalwebsite or in the MyŠKODA application.
- Wait for the registration completion message to appear.
- Confirm any messages on the screen.

Register users in Infotainment

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

- Switch on the Infotainment and in the displayed welcome window tap *Switch users* > *Register* and follow the instructions on the screen.

Or:

- **MENU** > 👤 > 👥 > *New user* > *Register* and follow the instructions on the screen.

To complete registration, access to the e-mail box entered during registration is required.

Activate ŠKODA Connect services when registering the main user

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

After the main user has been registered, the Infotainment prompts you to activate ŠKODA Connect services.

To complete the activation, it is necessary to have two original vehicle keys with you.

› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Activate ŠKODA Connectservices of another logged in user

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› **MENU** > > > *Become primary user* .

› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Setting personal data protection

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data can be found on the following website:

http://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

As a contracting party with regard to the use of the ŠKODA Connect services, you must ensure the protection of personal data and the right to privacy.

Inform the vehicle user and passengers that the vehicle is transmitting user data and using localization services. Failure to provide information can violate the rights of vehicle users and passengers.

Localisation services include, for example, information on the last parking position, area notification or speed notification.

If the passengers do not agree to the use of the localization services, switch off the services by setting the respective protection level for personal data.

Functionality

When using the ŠKODA Connectservices, the user and vehicle data, as well as information on localisation services, is sent.

How it is sent is influenced by the setting of the level of personal data protection.

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

The level of personal data protection that is set influences data transfer via eSIM.

The data transmission of connected devices via Wi-Fi is not affected.

Settings

The legally required services, e.g. emergency call, cannot be switched off.

Any vehicle user can set the level of protection of personal data.

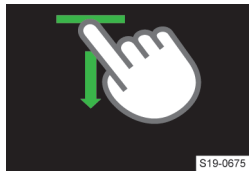
For the complete functionality of some ŠKODA Connect services, localisation services must be activated.

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

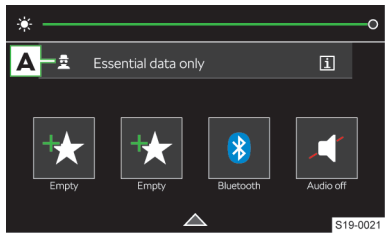
The level of protection of personal data is linked to the user account. This is set after the user has logged in according to the level that was last set.

Settings in the control centre

Applies to Infotainment Swing.



› Open the Infotainment control centre by holding down the bar at the top of the screen and pulling it down.



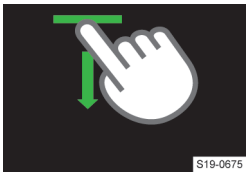
Display example in Infotainment Amundsen

A Tapping the symbol displays a menu for setting the protection level for personal data.

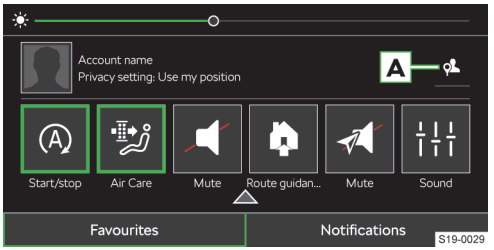
ⓘ Detailed information regarding levels of personal data protection

Settings in the control centre

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.



› Open the Infotainment control centre by holding down the bar at the top of the screen and pulling it down.



Display example in Infotainment Amundsen

A Tapping the symbol displays a menu for setting the protection level for personal data.

Set protection of personal data

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)* > *Privacy and services* .
› Set the desired level of personal data protection.

Settings in the user administration

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› **MENU** > 👤 > ⚙ > *Privacy and service management* .
› Set the desired level of personal data protection.

Maximum privacy
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

› All ŠKODA Connect services other than the services you need are turned off.
› All localisation services are turned off. The vehicle position information is not shared.

Maximum privacy
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› All ŠKODA Connect services other than the services you need are turned off.
› All localisation services are turned off. The vehicle position information is not shared.
› Information transmission via eSIM is switched off.
› No online updates available.

No position data
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

› All localisation services ŠKODA Connect are turned off. The vehicle position information is not shared.

No position data
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› All localisation services ŠKODA Connect are turned off. The vehicle position information is not shared.
› Information transmission via eSIM is switched on.
› All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Use my position
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

› Localisation services ŠKODA Connect are enabled. Information on vehicle position is not provided to other people.
› Information on the vehicle position is not available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the MyŠKODA application.

Use my position
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› Localisation services ŠKODA Connect are enabled. Information on vehicle position is not provided to other people.
› Information on the vehicle position is not available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the MyŠKODA application.
› Information transmission via eSIM is switched on.
› All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Share my position
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

› Localisation services ŠKODA Connect are enabled. The vehicle position information is available for all services which need to know the vehicle's position.
› Information on the vehicle position is available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the MyŠKODA application.

Share my position
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› Localisation services ŠKODA Connect are enabled. The vehicle position information is available for all services which need to know the vehicle's position.
› Information on the vehicle position is available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the MyŠKODA application.
› Information transmission via eSIM is switched on.
› All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Collection of anonymized data

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

If personal data protection level is set *Use my position* and *Share my position* the vehicle can collect and send

anonymized data in order to improve the services of selected third parties.

This is done exclusively in anonymous form, i.e. without any connection to the specific vehicle, the vehicle owner or any other authorised user.

User management

What you should be mindful of

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

When buying an older vehicle with ŠKODA Connect services, it is possible that the services are active and the main user is the previous owner of the vehicle. The previous owner can still have the possibility to control the vehicle functions and receive information about the users and the vehicle.

Therefore, we recommend deleting the previous main user. Then, log in with your own user account and set yourself as the main user of the vehicle.

If you register a new user and select yourself as the main user during registration, the previous main user is automatically overwritten.

ⓘ The type of user and vehicle information to be sent can be influenced by setting the protection level of personal data.

Functionality

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

User accounts

User Management displays the accounts of the last active users. The following activities can be carried out in user management:

- › Select a user account
- › Register user
- › Active ŠKODA Connect services
- › Add and remove user accounts
- › Set the main users
- › Set account security

Overview

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

Main user

The main user provides a registered user with activated ŠKODA Connectservices and a vehicle associated with his account.

The main user can take full advantage of the personalisation features.

The main user has full control over the settings and operation of the vehicle.

All settings are saved in the main user's personal online account.

User with a ŠKODA Connect online account

The user was not selected by the main user, but has his own ŠKODA Connect online account.

The user can take full advantage of the personalisation features.

All settings are saved in the registered user's personal online account.

Guest

A guest account is anonymous and will in no way synchronise with ŠKODA Connect services.

All changes to settings related to this account are stored exclusively in the vehicle.

Requirements

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

The following conditions must be met for unlimited use of the management of user accounts and their synchronization with online accounts:

- ✓ A main user with active ŠKODA Connect services is registered in Infotainment.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Operation

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

Log in user

After switching on the ignition ignition and Infotainment are switched on, the introductory login screen for the last user account used is displayed.

ⓘ The introductory log on screen cannot be skipped. Without registering, the Infotainment cannot be used.

- › Confirm the log-in.

  When you log in to a secure user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm the login.

Or:

- › Select the menu item for switching user.

  A menu containing available users is displayed.
- › Select the desired account.
- › When you log in to a secure user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm the login.

Or:

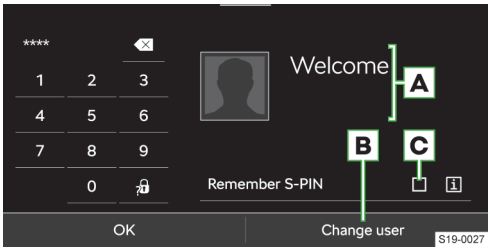
- › Select the menu item for switching user.

  A menu containing available users is displayed.
- › If you are a new user tap *New user* to register the user.
- › Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Log in to the protected user account

Some user accounts can be protected. Protected accounts are shown in the user list with the icon 🔒.

To **log in** to the protected user account you need the S-PINcreated when creating the user account on the ŠKODA Connect Portal Portal website, in the My-ŠKODA application or when registering the user in infotainment.



A User name

B Display user account management

C Turn off logging in to the account using the S-PIN

Display information about S-PIN

Display information about restoring the S-PIN

It is possible to switch user verification on / of by entering the S-PIN in the menu item **MENU** > > > *Protect user profile* > *Protect user profile with S-PIN* .

Restore S-PIN

Your S-PIN can be restored on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the MyŠKODA application.

› After restoring the S-PIN, register again for the My-ŠKODA application to function correctly in the vehicle as the main user.

› If you are the main user in several vehicles, register again in each vehicle.

Log out user

When the ignition is switched off, the logout screen is displayed, in which the selected vehicle functions can be viewed.

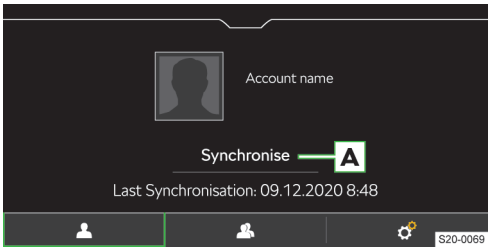
When the time interval expires, the logout screen is switched of and the user is automatically logged off.

Settings

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

User management

› Tap on **MENU** > .



A Online synchronization of the user account with the information about the last synchronization

Details of the currently selected user

› – A user account protected by the S-PIN

Change to another user / input data for a new user

Settings

Tap Become main user

› **MENU** > > > *Tap Become main user* and follow the instructions on the screen.

Delete user

› To display the user accounts, tap **MENU** > > > *Delete users* .

› To delete the user, select the user and confirm the deletion.

Deleting the main user account will delete the shared user accounts.

Delete the current user account

› **MENU** > > > *Tap Delete user profile* .

› Confirm the deletion.

Delete all users

Resetting the Infotainment to the factory settings will delete all user accounts.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.

› Tap **MENU** > .

› *Restore factory settings* select and confirm the reset.

To check the factory reset was successful, we recommend that you check the deletion of the user accounts and the main user account.

User account

What you should be mindful of

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

When buying an older vehicle with ŠKODA Connect services, it is possible that the services are active and the main user is the previous owner of the vehicle. The previous owner may also be able to control the vehicle functions and receive information about the user and the vehicle.

Therefore, we recommend removing the previous main user. Then log in with your own user account.

When you register a new user, the previous user is automatically overwritten.

Conditions

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

For user account management, the availability of the ŠKODA Connect services is indispensable.

Settings

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

Delete user

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Select the following menu:

MENU > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)* > *Registration*.

› *Delete owner* > *Delete* .
› Confirm the deletion.

ⓘ By deleting the registered vehicle in the user account on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal the user is also deleted in Infotainment.

Changing the user

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Select the following menu:

MENU > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)* > *Registration*.

› *New owner* > *Change of owner* .
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN code received during registration of the new user and during vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website.
› If necessary, confirm the change by confirming *Change main user* confirm.

Personalisation

Usage

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

The personalisation service allows you to set, set and store vehicle settings.

The personalisation service is connected to the user accounts. Any change to the set personalised functions is automatically stored in the active user account.

If the vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile phone network, personalisable settings are stored in the ŠKODA ID online user account after the ignition is switched off.

By registering for a user account in another ŠKODA brand vehicle, the custom functions associated with the user account are set according to vehicle type, equipment and infotainment.

Settings

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

Switch personalisation service on / off

› **MENU** > 👤 > ⚙ > *Privacy settings and manage services* .
› In the displayed list of online services, select the service **personalisation**.
› Switch the service off / on.

Management of online services

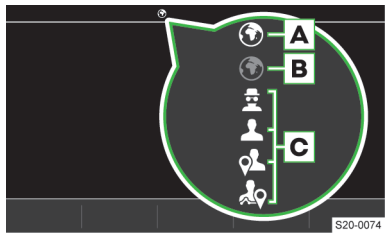
Usage

The following activities can be carried out in service management:

› Set protection of personal data
› Show the list of available services
› Receive information about the status of the services
› Receive information about the validity of the services
› Switch the use of the services on/off

Connection status of the online services

The connection status of the online services of ŠKODA Connect online services is indicated by an icon in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.



A The ŠKODA Connect online services are available.
B The ŠKODA Connect online services are not available.
C The set personal data protection level

- *Maximum privacy*
- *No position data*
- *Use my position*
- *Share my position*

Conditions

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

✓ A user with active ŠKODA Connect services is registered in Infotainment.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

✓ A main user with active ŠKODA Connect services is registered in Infotainment.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Operation

Show the list of online services

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)* > *Privacy and services* .

Show the list of online services

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› **MENU** > 👤 > ⚙ > *Privacy and service management* .

Show details of services

› Select the desired service from the list of online services.

Details about the service may contain the following information and functions:

› Status of the service
› Reason for the unavailability of the service
› Expiry date of the service's validity
› Switch use of the service on/off

Settings

Switch use of the service on/off

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)* > *Privacy and services* .
› Select the desired service from the displayed list of online services.
› Activate / deactivate the desired service.

ⓘ The service can only be used if it is available.

Switch use of the service on/off

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› **MENU** > 👤 > ⚙ > *Privacy and service management* .
› Select the desired service from the displayed list of online services.
› Activate / deactivate the desired service.

ⓘ The use of the service applies to all user accounts. The service can only be used if it is available.

eSIM data connection

Usage

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

For ŠKODA Connect services, the prepaid e-SIM data connection for online services can be used.

The data connection can be shared with another 8 connected devices using Wi-Fi.

Further information on the function of the data connection, user registration, availability of the data connection and on the overview of the data plans and countries, with the possibility of obtaining them, can be found on the following website:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Requirements

› In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.
› The availability, functioning, connection speed and technology used in the mobile network can be different in the respective countries and are dependent on the mobile network operator.
› ŠKODA AUTO can make changes to the mobile network in the meantime, e.g. generation-related replacement of an outdated technology; it assumes no liability.

Operation

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

Show ŠKODA Connect data packets

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Data connection* > *Data packets* .

The following information is displayed in the overview:

› Overview of the plans purchased
› Use of the data plans
› The plan is valid

The validity of the plan expires when the plan is fully used or when the period of validity expires.

Settings

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

Switch the use of the ŠKODA Connect services on/off.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *Data connection* > *Integrated data connection (eSIM)* .

Online System Update

Usage

The online update enables a software update.

The Infotainment automatically indicates a possible online update by showing a message on the Infotainment screen. Infotainment also offers the option of downloading the update or postponing the download process.

More information on online updates, their availability in the respective countries, on supported vehicles can be found on the following website:

http://go.skoda.eu/online-system-update

ⓘ If the approval for the update is postponed, the next time the ignition and Infotainment are switched on, the option to start the update will be offered once again.

Operation

Download update

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Follow the instructions and information displayed on the Infotainment screen.
› Confirm the download in the Infotainment.

The download process can be cancelled at any time. When the ignition is switched on again, the download process is automatically restored.

The download time depends on the speed and quality of the mobile network, the file size, and the type of update.

Install the update

⚠ WARNING

During installation, some control devices including the connectivity control device (OCU) may not work. In this event, there are no emergency calls, no automatic emergency calls in the event of an accident and none of the ŠKODA Connectservices will be available.

› Install the update while the vehicle is stationary.
› Park the vehicle safely.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Confirm the software installation on the Infotainment screen.

The vehicle can be left while the installation continues.

› Switch on the ignition and Infotainment after installation or return to the vehicle.
› Check the message regarding successful installation on the Infotainment screen.

ⓘ The emergency call indicator light does not light up during installation.

ⓘ After a successful installation, the emergency call indicator lamp lights up green.

Requirements

The following conditions must be met for a successful update:

✓ The ignition and the Infotainment are switched off.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services were activated in the vehicle.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.
✓ The vehicle has an internet connection.
✓ The *Maximum privacy* is not set in the vehicle.
✓ The charge state of the 12-volt vehicle battery is sufficient.

Self-help

If any of the following events occur while downloading the update or during installation, please contact a service provider:

› A message appears in the Infotainment screen regarding an incorrect download or installation of the update.
› The Infotainment screen goes out after switching on.
› The emergency call indicator lamp lights up red.

Shop

Usage

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

In Infotainment in the Shop menu, the following activities can be carried out

› Order new functions and services
› Extend purchased functions and services
› Buy subsequent ŠKODA Connect data plans

Devices connected via Wi-Fi can also access the data plans.

Further information on the data plans can be found on the following website:

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

The functions and services can be subject to a runtime limitation or even be unlimited.

The functions and services that are purchased are available to all vehicle users.

The functions and services can also be purchased later on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal.

Overview

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› Tap **MENU** > 🛒.

› Select the desired function or service from the list that is displayed.

Requirements

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

The availability of the services and functions depends on the vehicle and Infotainment type as well as being country-specific.

The following conditions must be met to activate new services and functions:

- ✓ Infotainment supports the activation of new services and functions.
- ✓ The vehicle trim level enables the use of new services or functions.

  If a service or a function is linked to a trim level that is not available with the vehicle, find out from a specialist garage whether the vehicle trim can be added.
- ✓ The main vehicle user is logged on.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.
- ✓ The charge state of the 12-volt vehicle battery is sufficient.

An active data connection is required for certain services or functions. The connection may be chargeable.

Activated services and functions are not linked to the validity period of ŠKODA Connect services.

Restriction

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

The functions are linked to the vehicle, not to the main user account. These cannot be transferred to any other vehicle in which the user logs on.

Information call

Usage

The information call may be used in the case of problems with the ŠKODA Connect services or for information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand.

By pressing the button ℹ, the connection to the local Infoline is made.

Requirements

- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to *Maximum privacy* .

  To send information about the position of the vehicle, the protection level of personal data must be set to *Share my position* .

Operation



› Press the ℹ button.

Breakdown call

Usage

The breakdown call can be used in the event of a breakdown.

By pressing the key 🔧 a connection is established with the ŠKODABreakdown Service. At the same time, the vehicle sends information about the vehicle condition and the vehicle position.

Requirements

- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to *Maximum privacy* .

  To send information about the position of the vehicle, the protection level of personal data must be set to *Share my position* .

Operation



› Press the 🔧 button.

Service schedules

Usage

If the vehicle detects that a service visit is necessary, it will automatically send this information to the service partner of your choice.

The service partner will then contact you and schedule the service visit with you.

Requirements

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions:

- ✓ The service partner is chosen on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the MyŠKODA application.
- ✓ The vehicle type, vehicle equipment and Infotainment type are supported.
- ✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to *Maximum privacy* .
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Vehicle status report

Usage

The vehicle health report function enables the vehicle status to be tracked online.

The service is in the MyŠKODA application is available.

The available vehicle data includes, for example, the distance travelled, selected warning messages or service inspection requirements.

Requirements

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions:

- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The set protection level for personal data that enables the required data to be sent.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

ŠKODA Connect-Services

Usage

Remote access to the vehicle

The service relating to remote access to the vehicle offers the possibility of remotely controlling certain vehicle functions and accessing vehicle information.

Available functions include, for example, the following:

› Locking and unlocking
› Last parking position
› Vehicle status

Infotainment Online

The service package Infotainment Online extends infotainment to include online services.

Available functions include, for example, the following:

› Online target import
› Online traffic information.
› Online System Update

Requirements

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions:

- ✓ The vehicle type, vehicle equipment and Infotainment type are supported.
- ✓ The set protection level for personal data that enables the required data to be sent.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Starting and driving

Start

Notes on starting

⚠ DANGER

Danger of poisoning by exhaust gases!

› Do not run the engine in an enclosed space.

Operating conditions

✓ The vehicle key is located in the vehicle interior.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of key loss, possibly of key damage!
The system can detect the key even if it has been forgotten on the vehicle roof.

› Always keep the key with you.

Switching the ignition on and off



› Press the starter button.

Starting the vehicle with manual transmission

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Move the shift lever to the neutral position.
› Keep the clutch pedal depressed.
› Press the starter button.

Starting the vehicle with automatic transmission

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Move the selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
› Press the starter button.

In vehicles with diesel engines, the indicator light lights up after the ignition is switched on - Diesel preheating system on. The engine starts after the following goes out .

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of unexpected vehicle movement!

› At temperatures below -10°C, start the vehicle with the selector lever in the **P** position.

Stopping the engine

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Press the starter button.

⚠ WARNING

Steering lock hazard!

› During a journey with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of engine overheating!

› Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute.

Starting issues

Troubleshooting

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of engine damage!

› Do not start the vehicle by towing.

The engine does not start

› Switch off the ignition.
› Wait 30 seconds and repeat the starting procedure.
› If the engine does not start, use the jump start cables with the 12 volt vehicle battery of another vehicle » page 220 or seek the help of a specialist garage.

The engine does not start, the display shows a message regarding the immobilizer

› Use the other vehicle key.
› If the engine does not start, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Starting is not possible with the starter button, the system did not detect the key



illuminates



› Press the starter button with the key.
› If the engine does not start, seek the help of a specialist garage.

⚿ The key might not be detected if the battery in the key is nearly discharged or the signal is faulty.

The engine cannot be turned off with the starter button

› Hold the starter button or press twice.

The radiator fan keeps running even after the engine has stopped

The radiator fan can continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the engine is stopped. This is not a defect.

The engine makes noises after the cold start

The increased running noise is due to the briefly increased engine speed. This is not a defect.

START STOP

Usage

The START-STOP system reduces polluting emissions and the CO_2emissions and saves fuel.

Functionality

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops, it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

Vehicle with manual transmission

A system-related engine switch-off occurs when stopping, when switching the gear lever into the neutral position, and when releasing the clutch pedal.

A system-related engine start occurs when the clutch pedal is pressed down.

Vehicle with automatic transmission

A system-related engine switch-off occurs when the brake pedal is actuated and the engine is stopped.

A system-related engine start occurs when the accelerator pedal is pressed down. When the Auto Hold function is deactivated, a system-related engine start occurs after releasing the brake pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

Ⓐ - Engine is switched off via the START-STOP system

Ⓐ - Engine is not switched off via the START-STOP system due to operating conditions that are not met

Display of detailed information in the infotainment screen

CAR > 🚗 > *Vehicle status*

Or:

MENU > 🚘 > 🚗 > *Vehicle status*

Operating conditions

Some conditions are systemic and can neither be influenced nor recognised. Therefore, the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The driver must fulfil the following conditions:

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.

Settings

Automatic activation

› Upon start-up of the engine.
› By selecting the driving mode Eco » *page 184, Operation*.

Deactivate/activate system

› Press the Ⓐ OFF button.

When the system is deactivated, the symbol illuminates in the button Ⓐ OFF.

If a system-related engine switch-off occurs and the system is deactivated, the engine will start.

Troubleshooting

The engine does not switch off when stopping, or it starts before starting up

The system has detected that the engine is running.

Manual gearbox

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of engine damage!
› Shift into higher gear before reaching the red area of the rev counter scale.

ⓘ NOTICE

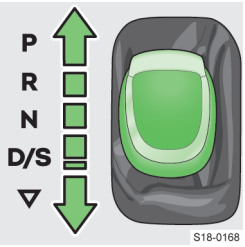
Danger of gearbox damage!
› Depress the clutch pedal all the way down.
› If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever.

Engaging reverse gear

› Stop the vehicle.
› Depress the clutch pedal completely.
› Move the shift lever to the neutral position.
› Push the gearshift lever down.
› Set this completely to the left.
› Wait briefly.
› Engage reverse gear.

Automatic gearbox

Lever positions



P Parked vehicle

The drive wheels are locked.

P Only set the position when the vehicle is stationary.

R Reverse gear

R Only set the position when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral

There is no transmission of engine power to the wheels.

D/S Forward drive / sports program

The gear is changed automatically.

In **S** mode, the gear is changed at higher speeds than in **D** mode.

▽ Choose between D and S (spring-loaded position)

Moving the selector lever out of the P or N position

lights up - the selector lever is locked



› Press the brake pedal, and at the same time, press the button in the selector lever.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the stationary vehicle rolling away automatically!

› When the selector lever is in the **D/S** position, **R** position or in manual shift mode, secure the vehicle with the brake.

Operation

Starting up

› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Start the engine.
› Press the button in the selector lever and set it to the desired position.
› Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal lightly.

Speeding up while driving (Kick-down)

› Fully depress the accelerator.

Stopping temporarily (e.g. at a junction)

› Leave the selector lever in the **D/S** position and secure the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Stopping

› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Press the button in the selector lever and set it to the **P** position.
› Turn off the engine.

Driving in neutral

If the system detects that no gear is engaged while driving, it automatically switches to neutral position.

ECO will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

Requirements for driving in neutral position

✓ **D** mode is chosen.
✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is pressed.
✓ The vehicle speed is 20-130 km/h.
✓ There is no device connected to the trailer socket.

Accelerate as much as possible when starting off (Launch-control)

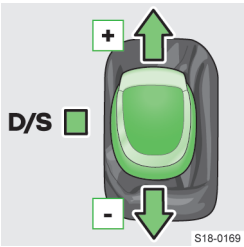
This function allows maximum acceleration during start-up.

› Select **S** mode or manual shift mode.
› The ASR deactivate » *page 190*.
› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Fully depress the accelerator.
› Release the brake pedal.

The vehicle drives with maximum acceleration.

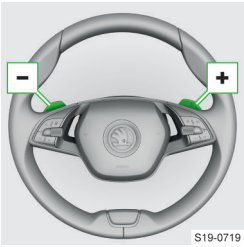
Manually switching gear with the selector lever

› To **turn on**, put the selector lever in the **D/S** position to the right (to the left for right-hand drive vehicles).
› To **turn off**, put the selector lever back in the **D/S** position.



+ Changing up a gear
- Changing down a gear

Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel



- Changing down a gear
+ Changing up a gear

› To **switch on** the shift paddle, press - or +.
› To **turn off** the shift paddle, hold +.

If none of the shift paddles are pressed for a certain time, manual shift mode turns off automatically.

If the engine threatens to over-rev

› The gearbox automatically changes to the next higher gear.
› The transmission prevents changing to the next lower gear.

Troubleshooting

The selector lever cannot be moved out of position P in the normal way

› Manually unlock the selector lever » page 183.

Gearbox overheated

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the gearbox overheating

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the gearbox overheating

› Stop driving! Stop the vehicle and stop the engine.
› After the indicator light goes out, your journey can continue.
› If the warning light does not go out, stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Gearbox impaired

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the gearbox in emergency mode

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
› Immediately seek the help of a specialist garage.

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding a gearbox fault

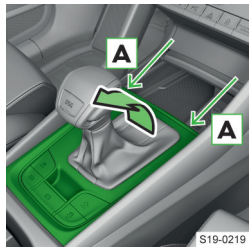
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Starting up a vehicle that is stuck

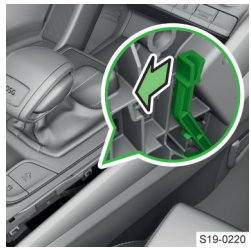
› Adjust the selector lever between **D/S** and **R**. The vehicle will then start to rock and be easier to free.

Manual release of automatic gearbox

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Open the stowage compartment in the front centre console.



› Insert a flat-head screwdriver or push a similar tool into the gap in the area of arrow A.
› Carefully loosen and lift the quadrant cover.



› Pull on the plastic part in the direction of the arrow and at the same time press the button on the selector lever.
› Put the selector lever in **N** position.

Vehicle driving mode

Usage

The driving mode offers the possibility of adapting the driving behaviour to the desired driving style.

Overview

Information about the selected driving mode is displayed in the status bar in the Infotainment screen as well as in the digital instrument cluster.

Eco mode

Eco mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Comfort mode

The Comfort mode is suitable for driving on roads with poorer surface or for long motorway journeys.

Normal mode

The Normal mode is suitable for a conventional driving.

Sport mode

The Sport mode is suitable for a sporty driving.

Individual mode

The Individual mode allows the individual configuration of certain vehicle systems.

Snow mode

Snow mode is suitable for driving on slippery or snowy roads. In this mode, the automatic gearbox cannot be set to mode **S**.

Offroad mode

Offroad mode is suitable for driving on non-paved roads. But even with Offroad mode switched on, your vehicle is never a true SUV.

The following brake and stabilisation systems change in Offroad mode.

- ESC
- ASR
- EDS
- ABS

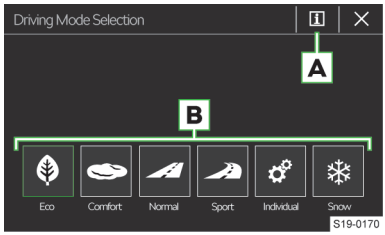
When switched on Offroad mode lights up , and in the instrument cluster.

Operation

Select driving mode

› Press the MODE button or MODE.

In the Infotainment, a driving mode menu appears.



A Information on the system settings of the currently selected mode/system settings for the selected Individual mode

B Driving mode menu

› Tap the relevant function surface B.

Or:

› Press the MODE button or MODE again.

After switching on the ignition, Normal mode is automatically selected.

Switch on Offroad mode

› Press the button.

The Offroad information appears in the Infotainment.

Offroad information

The Offroad information serves to determine the current driving situation.

The Offroad information display is shown in the Infotainment in the menu item:

CAR > > *Offroad*

Or:

MENU > > > *Offroad*

A swipe of the finger vertically across the screen allows three of the following displays to be shown.

- Steering angle
- Coolant temperature
- Oil temperature
- Compass (Infotainment Amundsen, Columbus)
- Altimeter (Infotainment Amundsen, Columbus)

Troubleshooting

Adaptive suspension faulty DCC

illuminates together with

or

illuminates together with

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Economical driving style

Tips for economical driving

› Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
› Follow the gear recommendation in the display of the instrument cluster.
› Avoid full acceleration and too high speeds.
› Avoid engine idling during longer periods of stationary time.
› Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine starts.
› Observe the prescribed tyre pressure » *page 230*.
› Remove unnecessary ballast.
› Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
› Switch on electric consumers only for as long as necessary.
› Do not leave the windows open while driving.

Consumption-friendly driving

In the following situations, a small reduction in fuel consumption occurs. ECO lights up in the instrument cluster.

› Active cylinder management has temporarily disabled some cylinders in the engine (applies to certain engine types).
› A vehicle with automatic transmission rolls in neutral position.

Towing a trailer

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

When driving with a trailer, special care is required!

ⓘ NOTICE

With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Recommendations for using a trailer

› Adjust the tyre pressure on the vehicle for full load.
› Do not exceed the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle and the combination weight specified in the technical vehicle documentation (e.g. in the vehicle registration documentation, in the COC document) and on the type plate.
› For trailer operation, consider the current load condition of the vehicle as well as the distribution of the load in the trailer. The coupled trailer increases the rear axle load and can therefore reduce the payload.
› Adjust the headlight range of the headlights according to the load status of the vehicle. The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.
› A speed of **100 km/h** should not be exceeded.
› Reduce the speed by releasing the accelerator pedal as soon as a pendulum movement of the trailer is noticeable. Never attempt to stop the trailer from swaying by accelerating.
› If the traffic area behind the trailer can not be viewed, install additional exterior mirrors.
› Apply the brakes in good time. If the trailer is fitted with a trailer brake, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.
› Select a lower gear before descending to also use the braking force of the engine.

Distribution of the load over the vehicle and trailer combination

› Secure heavy objects against slipping, as close to the trailer axle as possible.
› Transport small and light objects in the luggage compartment.

Permitted trailer loads

The details in the technical vehicle documentation take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
› Do not exceed the permissible trailer load.

Engine type	Gearbox	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg) [a]		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	
		Five-seat version	Seven-seat version	Five-seat version	Seven-seat version
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1600	1600	750	750
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	DSG [b]	1800	1800	750	750
	DSG [b] 4x4	2000	2000	750	750
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1800	1800	750	750
	DSG [b]	1800	1800	750	750
2.0 l/132 kW TSI	DSG [b] 4x4	2200	2000	750	750
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	DSG [b] 4x4	2200	2000	750	750
2.0 l/180 kW TSI	DSG [b] 4x4	2300	2000	750	750
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	DSG [b]	2000	2000	750	750
	DSG [b] 4x4	2300	2000	750	750
2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR	DSG [b] 4x4	2300	2000	750	750

[a] With gradients up to 12 %.

[b] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

Towing eye and towing procedure

Conditions for towing

- ✓ The technical condition of the vehicle enables the towing process.
- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The shift lever is in the neutral position or the selector lever is in the **N** position.

Restriction

› Towing speed max. 50 km/h

› Towing distance max. 50 km

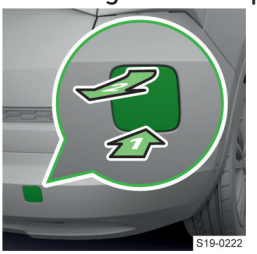
Towing lug

Removing the grille



› Insert the clamp for taking off the full wheel trims in the recess in the grille, and remove the grille.

Removing the rear cap



› Press on the cap and remove it.

Installing the towing eye



› Screw in the towing eye.

› Insert the wheel wrench or similar object through the towing eye.

› Tighten the towing eye.

After the towing process

› Unscrew the towing eye.

› Insert the cover or grille.

Towing the vehicle

When towing, observe the country-specific legal regulations.

Towing takes practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the specific features of the towing process.

⚠ WARNING

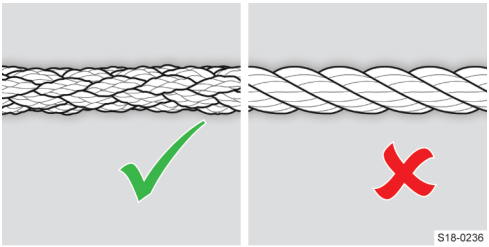
When the ignition is switched off, the brake booster and the power steering do not work. In addition, there is a risk that the steering lock will engage.

› If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition!

⚠ WARNING

› The tow rope must not be twisted.

› Use a braided synthetic fibre rope for towing. Do not use a twisted tow rope.



ⓘ NOTICE

› Always keep the tow rope taut during the towing procedure.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of gearbox damage!

› If the gearbox no longer contains any oil, the vehicle must only be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or transported on a special breakdown vehicle.

› Vehicles with automatic transmission must not be towed without the ignition switched on or with the rear axle raised.

Where should the tow rope or the tow bar be secured?

› At the front towing eye

› At the rear towing eye

› On the ball bar of the factory-installed towing hitch

ⓘ For vehicles with factory-fitted towing device, at the back there is no mount for a screw-in towing eye.

Information for the driver of the towing vehicle

› Drive slowly and smoothly.

› Only accelerate once the rope is taut.

Information for the driver of the towed vehicle

› Move the shift lever to the neutral position or the selector lever to the **N** position.

Brakes

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Problems and faults with the brake system can extend the braking distance of the vehicle!

⚠ DANGER

Danger of a functional restriction of the brake booster!

› When braking in a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, depress the clutch pedal.

⚠ DANGER

Danger of the brakes overheating!

› Do not depress the brake pedal unless braking is required.

› If the original front spoiler is damaged, ensure the air supply to the front brakes is guaranteed.

Inspecting the brake fluid level

Test conditions

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface

✓ The engine is off

Checking



The fill level must be within the marked range.

› If the level is below the mark **MIN**, do not continue.

› Do not refill liquid.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this will be indicated in the instrument cluster by the illumination of ⓘ is displayed in the status bar. Nevertheless, we recommend checking the brake fluid level regularly directly at the reservoir.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of brake failure!

If the fluid level falls significantly within a short time or drops below the mark **MIN**, the brake system may have become leaky.

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Specification

The brake fluid must comply with standard VW 501 14 . This standard complies with the requirements of the FMVSS 116 DOT4 standard.

Changing

Have the brake fluid replaced by a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING
Danger of brake failure!
If the brake fluid change date is exceeded, heavy braking may cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system.

Troubleshooting

Brake fluid level is too low

illuminates

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Brake system and anti-lock braking system faulty

illuminates together with

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Worn brake pads

illuminates

› Drive to a specialist garage, exercising appropriate caution.

Reduced braking effect

Damp, frozen, salt-affected or corroded brakes can impair the braking effect.

› Clean the brakes by braking several times if traffic conditions allow it.

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads can occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system.

When the engine is stopped, the brake booster does not work

› Depress the brake pedal more forcefully.

Electric parking brake

Operation

⚠ WARNING
Danger of key locking!
› The recessed grip for the fingers in front of the button Ⓟ must remain empty.

Manual switch on



› Pull the button Ⓟ and hold it.

The following symbols light up:

› Ⓟ in the button
› Ⓟ in the instrument cluster

Automatic shut-off

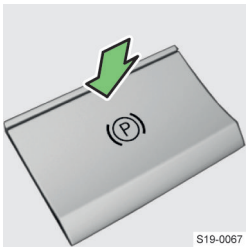
The parking brake switches off automatically when starting up.

If automatic switch-off is to be prevented, e.g. when starting off on a slope, keep the button Ⓟ pulled.

Conditions for automatic shutting down

✓ Driver's door is closed, in some cases, the driver's seat belt is also fastened

Manual shut-down



› With the ignition switched on, press the brake pedal and at the same time push the Ⓟ button.

Troubleshooting

Parking brake error

Ⓟ illuminates

Message regarding a parking brake error

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Parking on a steep slope

Ⓟ flashes

Notification regarding parking position on a steep slope

› Go to another parking spot where there is less of a slope.

Noise when using the parking brake

Noise when using the parking brake is normal. This is not a defect.

The 12-volt vehicle battery is discharged, the parking brake cannot be switched off

› Connect the 12-volt vehicle battery to a power source, such as the 12-volt vehicle battery of another vehicle.

Emergency braking in case of faulty brake system

Switching on



› Pull the button Ⓟ and hold it.

The vehicle starts to brake **sharply** and an acoustic signal is sounded.

Switching off

› Release the button Ⓟ.

Or:

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Auto Hold automatic holding function

Usage

Auto Hold automatically secures the vehicle from rolling away when stopped.

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
Auto Hold is not able to stop the vehicle under all circumstances, such as on slippery ground, or on gradients.

Secure and release the vehicle

With **Stop**, the vehicle is automatically **secured** using Auto Hold. Ⓟ lights up in the instrument cluster. The brake pedal can be released.

With **Start**, the vehicle is automatically **released** using Auto Hold.

Automatic protection from the parking brake

Under certain circumstances, the vehicle can be secured using the parking brake. Ⓟ lights up in the instrument cluster.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The engine is running or has been switched off by the START-STOPsystem.
- ✓ Auto Hold is activated.
- ✓ On vehicles with an automatic gearbox, the selector lever is not in **N** mode.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

› Press the Ⓐ button.

Activation is indicated by the illumination of the symbol Ⓐ in the button.

ⓘ NOTICE

Disable Auto Hold to allow the vehicle to roll if necessary when driving through a car wash.

Driver assist systems

Braking and stabilising systems

Overview

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle in borderline situations e.g. when the vehicle starts to skid. ESC brakes the individual wheels to maintain the direction of travel.

 flashes – ESC is engaged

ESC Sport

ESC Sport enables a sportier driving style.

 illuminates – ESC Sport is activated

Traction control (ASR)

ASR helps to stabilize the vehicle when accelerating or driving on low-grip roads. ASR reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels when the wheels spin.

 flashes – ASR is engaged

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS helps maintain control of the vehicle during emergency braking. An ABS intervention is noticeable by pulsating movements of the brake pedal.

Engine drag torque control (MSR)

MSR helps to maintain control of the vehicle in the event of a sudden reduction in speed, e.g. on icy roads. If the wheels of the driven axle lock, the MSR increases the engine speed. This reduces the braking effect of the engine and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDS)

EDS helps to stabilize the vehicle when driving on road surfaces with different grip under the individual wheels. EDS brakes a spinning wheel and transmits power to a different drive wheel.

Electronic Differential Lock (XDS+)

XDS+ helps to keep the vehicle on the turn by effectively braking the wheels on the inner side of the turn.

Active steering assistance (DSR)

In difficult situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

HHC helps when starting off on uphill gradients by braking the vehicle for about 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The gradient is at least 5%.
- ✓ The driver's door is closed.

Multi-collision brake (MCB)

MCB helps to decelerate and stabilize the vehicle after a collision with an obstacle. This reduces the risk of further collisions.

Operating conditions

- ✓ There has been a frontal, side and rear collision of a certain severity.
- ✓ The impact speed was greater than 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, ESC and other required systems remained functional after the impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not pressed.

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

TSA helps to stabilize the trailer. As the trailer begins to lurch, TSA stabilizes the trailer by slowing down the individual vehicle wheels.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The hitch was supplied from the factory or purchased from ŠKODA Genuine Accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is connected to the trailer socket.
- ✓ ASR is activated.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.

Settings

Deactivating/activating ASR

› Press the button.

Or:

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

MENU > > >

Or:

CAR > >

When deactivated, lights up in the instrument cluster.

goes out on renewed activation.

Deactivating the ASR may be helpful in the following situations:

› Driving with snow chains
› Driving in deep snow or on very loose ground
› Starting up a vehicle that is stuck

Activating/deactivating ESC Sport

› Keep the button pressed down.

Or:

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

MENU > > >

Or:

CAR > >

When activated, lights up in the instrument cluster.

goes out when deactivated.

Troubleshooting

ESC or ASR faulty/deactivated by the system

illuminates

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If the indicator light does not go out after covering a short distance, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ABS faulty

illuminates

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Brake system and ABS faulty

illuminates together with

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Functionality

Front Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle ahead and points out when the safety distance is exceeded. In borderline situations, it helps to avoid a collision by braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

illuminates – safety distance too small

or illuminates – warning in case of collision

Automatic braking if there is a risk of a collision

If there is a risk of a collision, the following symbol is illuminated as a warning or from the isolation box. If you do not respond to the warning, the vehicle will slow down.

At a driving speed of up to 30 km / h, the vehicle is braked without prior warning.

Automatic braking can be stopped by pressing the accelerator pedal or by a steering intervention.

With automatic braking, the pressure in the brake system increases. The brake pedal cannot be operated by using the pedal as normal.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
Front Assist does not respond to crossing or oncoming vehicles.
The reaction to oncoming vehicles is limited.

Operating conditions

✓ The ASR is activated.
✓ The driving speed is higher than 5 km/h.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

› About 30 seconds after starting (the indicator light lights up in the instrument cluster)
› When driving around a sharp bend
› When there is an ESC intervention

Settings

Automatic activation

Front Assist is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation in the instrument cluster

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
› Select *Front Assist* .

Activation/deactivation in Infotainment

In the menu **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > .

Show system deactivation in the display of the instrument cluster

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

ⓘ Deactivate Front Assist when handling the vehicle on a truck, a car ferry etc.

Troubleshooting

Front Assist is not available

illuminates together with ⚠

Or:

illuminates together with ⚠

- Clean the front radar sensor.
- Stop the engine and start again.
- If Front Assist is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.
- If the brake lights are working and Front Assist is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

There was an unfounded warning or system intervention

- Clean the front radar sensor.
- If the system is not working properly, disable Front Assist and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Video – Front Assist

Front Assist – Activation

http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-kodiaq-front-assist

Pedestrian detection system

Functionality

Pedestrian recognition helps to prevent a collision with crossing pedestrians by enabling automatic braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

or lights up – danger of collision

Risk of collision in a speed range of 5-30 km/h

The system triggers automatic braking.

Risk of collision in a speed range of 30-60 km/h

The system warns of a collision hazard first. If the driver does not respond, the vehicle is automatically braked.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Front Assist is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is 5-60 km/h.

Speed limiter

Functionality

The speed limiter controls the maximum driving speed according to the set speed limit.

If the limit is exceeded when driving downhill, brake the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

Applies to the digital instrument cluster.

illuminates – the cruise control is activated.

illuminates – the cruise control is active
flashing – the set threshold limit has been exceeded
When cruise control starts, the set threshold limit is displayed.

Applies to the analogue instrument cluster.

illuminates – the cruise control is activated.

illuminates together with – cruise control is active
When cruise control starts, is highlighted and the set threshold limit is displayed.

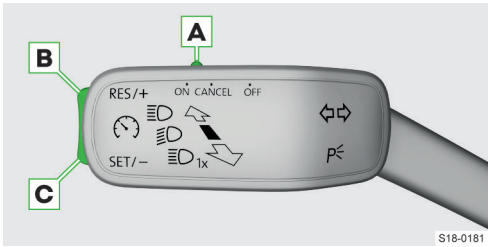
flashing – the set threshold limit has been exceeded

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.

Operation

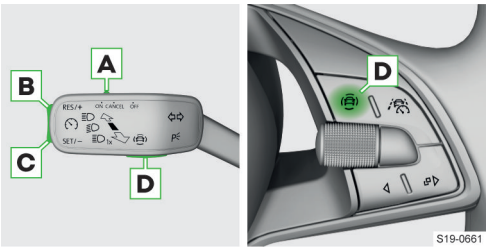
Variant without cruise control



- **A** **ON** Activate limiter (control inactive)
  OFF Deactivate limiter
  CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)
- **B** **RES/+** Resume control [1] / Increase limit
- **C** **SET/-** Start control with current speed / Reduce limit

[1] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Variant with cruise control



A **ON** Activate cruise control (condition for the subsequent activation of the limiter).

To **enable the speed limiter**, press the button D and in the instrument cluster choose the menu item *Speed limit* .

OFF Deactivate limiter

CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resume control [1] / Increase limit

C **SET/-** Start control with current speed / Reduce limit

D Show menu of assist systems – Possibility of switching between cruise control and speed limiter

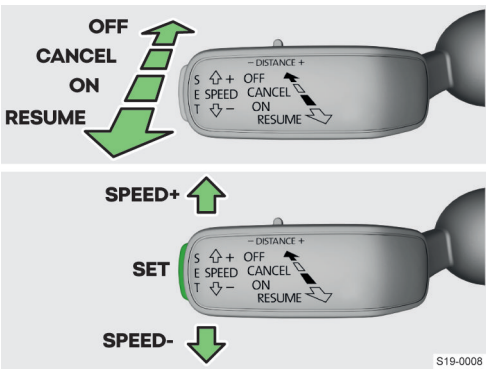
Switching to cruise control interrupts the control.

Adjusting the speed limit with the buttons B and C

By pressing in steps of **1 km/h**

By holding in steps of **10 km/h**

Variant with ACC



ON Activate ACC (condition for the subsequent activation of the limiter). To enable the speed limiter, press the button and in the multifunction steering wheel and in the instrument cluster choose the menu item *Speed limit* .

RESUME Resume control [1] / Increase limit in steps of 1 km/h (sprung position)

CANCEL Stop control (sprung position)

OFF Deactivate the limiter

SPEED + Increase limit in steps of 10 km/h

SPEED – Decrease limit in steps of 10 km/h

SET Start control/Reduce limit in steps of 1 km/h

Limit exceeded

› **Fully depress** the accelerator.

Control will continue as soon as the vehicle has decelerated to below the set limit.

Troubleshooting

Speed limiter faulty

LIM illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Cruise control system

Functionality

The cruise control system maintains the set speed without the accelerator pedal having to be operated.

This, however, is only possible to the extent permitted by the engine output and braking power of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the cruise control system starting unintentionally!

› Deactivate cruise control after use.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

Applies to the digital instrument cluster.

Illuminated – the cruise control system is activated

Illuminated – cruise control is active

When cruise control starts, the set speed is displayed.

Applies to the analogue instrument cluster.

Illuminated – the cruise control system is activated

illuminates along with – cruise control is active

[1] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

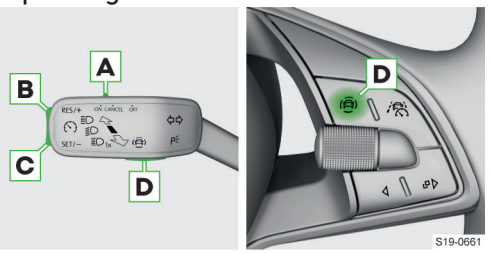
When cruise control starts, is highlighted and the set speed is displayed.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 20 km/h.

Operation

Operating with the lever



- **A** **ON** Activate cruise control (cruise control deactivated)
  OFF Deactivate cruise control
  CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)
- **B** **RES/+** Resume cruise control[1] / Increase speed
- **C** **SET/-** Start control with current speed/Reduce limit
- **D** Show menu of assist systems – Possibility of switching between cruise control and speed limiter

Accelerate temporarily

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Interrupting cruise control

› After pressing the brake pedal
› After an ESC intervention

Troubleshooting

Cruise control system faulty

illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Functionality

ACC-control

ACC maintains the set speed. When your vehicle approaches the vehicle in front, ACC will automatically start to maintain the set distance to this vehicle.

Maintaining the set speed and the distance will hereinafter be referred to as **Control**.

⚠ WARNING

ACC does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

ACC is intended primarily for use on motorways.

pACC (Predictive cruise control)

pACC represents an extension of the ACC system.

pACC adjusts the speed according to recognized speed limits and the route, e.g. curves, intersections or roundabouts.

The system uses the following sources to evaluate the situation:

› Navigation data
› Traffic Sign Recognition
› Sensors, radars and cameras

⚠ WARNING

pACC does not respond to railway crossings.

Speed range

Depending on the equipment, ACC allows a speed setting in the range of 30-160 or 30-210 km/h.

If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed is automatically increased to 30 km/h or controlled according to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

Distance level

The distance to the vehicle ahead can be adjusted to five different levels.

⚠ WARNING

› Maintain a minimum distance in accordance with the country-specific legal regulations.

Automatic stop and start with automatic gearbox

A vehicle with an automatic transmission can be decelerated to a stop using the ACC and start moving again. Control is disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

To resume the regulation:

[1] If no speed is set, the current speed is adopted.

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Or:

› Set the lever in position **RESUME**.

Or:

› *Applies to vehicles with hand recognition on the steering wheel:* Grab the steering wheel again.

The control is interrupted when the brake pedal is depressed.

Overtaking

If your vehicle changes to the fast lane and no vehicle is detected in front, ACC accelerates up to the set speed.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

illuminates – ACC is activated

illuminates – cruise control is active

When the control starts, the set speed is displayed.

illuminates – ACC does not decelerate sufficiently

› Depress the brake pedal.

illuminates – ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed

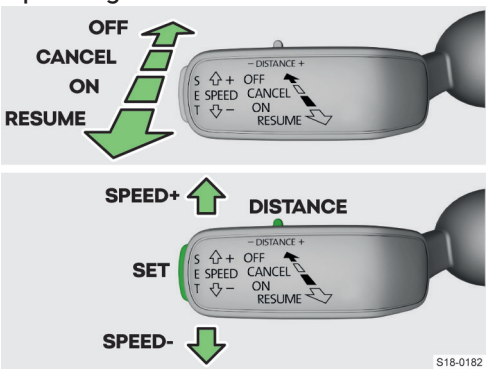
Illuminates – ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching roundabout

illuminates – ACC controls the driving speed according to the approaching junction

illuminates – ACC controls the driving speed according to the road

Operation

Operating with the lever



ON Activate ACC (control deactivated)

RESUME Start or resume control/Increase speed in steps of 1 km/h (sprung position)

CANCEL Stop control (sprung position)

OFF Deactivate ACC

SPEED + Increase speed in steps of 10 km/h

SPEED – Reduce speed in steps of 10 km/h

DISTANCE Set distance level

SET Start control/Reduce speed in steps of 1 km/h

Starting control with the current speed

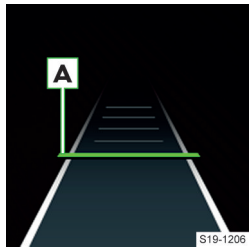
› Tap on **SET**.

Or:

› If no speed is saved, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

Set distance level

› Move the **DISTANCE** switch to the sprung position **–** or **+**.



Line **A** appears in the display, indicating the change in distance.

› Use the **DISTANCE** switch to set the desired distance level.

For temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle accelerates and control is temporarily interrupted. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is resumed.

Interrupting cruise control

› After pressing the brake pedal
› By operating the clutch pedal for a long time
› After an ESC intervention
› After deactivation of the ASR

Resuming control

› If a speed is stored, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

The vehicle is controlled at the set speed. The set speed is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Function restriction

Do not use the ACC in the following cases:

› The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
› The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
› When the driving lane is too narrow.
› The vehicle drives through a construction site.

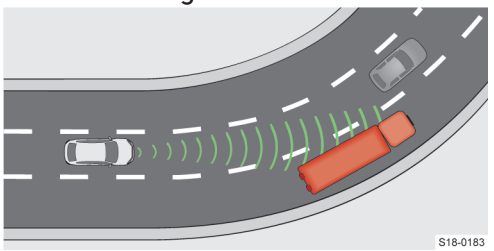
⚠ WARNING

› Be particularly attentive and alert in the following situations.

Regulation according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane

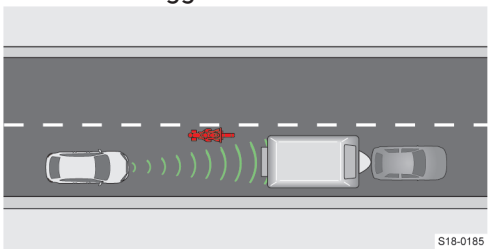
If your vehicle is moving faster than the vehicle in the next lane on the driver's side, at a speed of more than 80 km/h, this may cause your vehicle to be controlled according to that vehicle.

When cornering



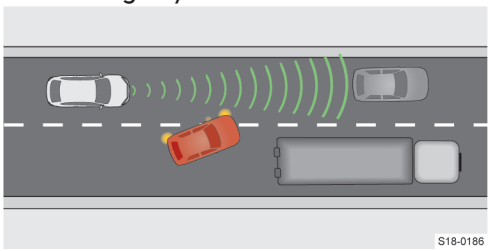
When cornering, a vehicle in the next lane may enter the detected area. Your vehicle will be controlled according to this vehicle.

Narrow or staggered vehicle



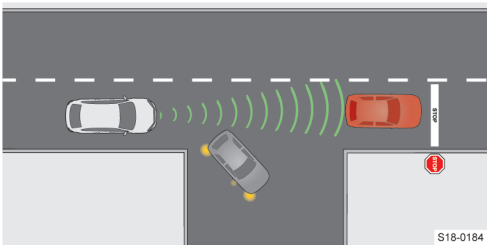
ACC detects a narrow or staggered vehicle only when it is in the area covered by the radar.

Lane change by another vehicle



A vehicle that changes to the lane a short distance away may not be possibly recognized by the ACC in time.

Stationary vehicle



If a vehicle in front turns and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, the ACC **may not possibly respond** to the stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special load or special bodies

A load or superstructure that protrudes outside the vehicle might not be detected by the ACC.

Settings

Activation / deactivation and setting

In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *All assistance systems* > .

› *Driving programme:* – Setting the vehicle acceleration when the ACC is switched on (this setting is made for vehicles with driving mode selection » *page 184*)
› *Distance:* – Setting the distance to vehicles in front
› *Road layout preview* – Switch the cruise control on/off according to the road profile (e.g. reduce speed before a bend)
› *Speed limit preview* – Switch the speed control on/off according to the permissible speed

Troubleshooting

ACC not available

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Stop the engine and start again.
› If ACC is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.
› If the brake lights are working and ACC is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Video – Adaptive Cruise Control ACC

ACC – settings

http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-kodiaq-acc

Lane Assist

Usage

Lane Assist helps to keep the vehicle within the lane. It is based on the boundaries of a lane. These may include lane markings, road edges or objects such as curbs or possibly traffic cones.

The system is intended primarily for use on highways.

Functionality

As the vehicle approaches a lane marking, the system executes a steering movement in the opposite direction from the lane marking. The steering intervention can be overridden manually.

Vehicles without the Side Assist system: No system intervention occurs when changing lane with the turn signal on.

Vehicles with the Side Assist system: When changing lanes, if Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle using the indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover, then the system intervenes even if the turn signal is switched on.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

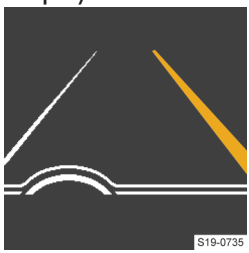
lights up – System is activated and ready to intervene

lights up – System is activated and ready to intervene

lights up – System intervenes

lights up – System intervenes

Display



Lane boundary highlighted on the right: system intervenes on the right when approaching the lane marking.

Warning through steering wheel vibrations

The steering wheel vibrations are triggered in the following situations:

- The system is not able to keep the vehicle within the lane.
- *Vehicles without the Side Assist system:* The vehicle crosses the boundary line without the indicator light switched on.
- *Vehicles with the Side Assist system:* The vehicle crosses the boundary line without the indicator light switched on. If Side Assist warns of an approaching vehicle using the indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover, then a steering wheel vibration is triggered even when the turn signal is switched off.
- Correct the steering movement in the event of vibrations.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.
- ✓ The lane markings are clearly visible.

Function restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
- The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
- When the driving lane is too narrow.
- The vehicle drives through a construction site.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Certain objects or markings on the road may be erroneously recognized as lane markings.

- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

Settings

Activation/deactivation in the instrument cluster

- Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Select *Lane Assist* .

Activation/deactivation of the system in Infotainment

In the menu **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > .

Activation/deactivation of the steering wheel vibration

In the menu **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > .

After switching off the ignition, the last setting of the steering wheel vibrations is automatically saved.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Clean the windscreen in the sensor area.
› Stop the engine and restart again after a short time.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Video – Lane Assist Lane Assist

Lane Assist – Activation
http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-kodiaq-lane-assist

Travel Assist

Usage

Travel Assist helps to keep the vehicle within the lane while controlling the speed of the vehicle.

Functionality

Travel Assist uses the functions Lane Assist and ACC.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!
› Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to take over the steering.
› The notes in the functional description of Lane Assist and ACC are to be taken into account.

Adaptive lane assist

This function keeps the driver within the selected position within the lane.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

lights up – the system is activated, cruise control and adaptive lane guidance are active

lights up – the system is activated, cruise control is active

lights up – the system is activated, adaptive lane guidance is active

lights up – you have released the steering wheel, take over steering

lights up – you have released the steering wheel, take over steering immediately

Operating conditions

✓ ACC is activated.
✓ The vehicle speed is max. 210 km/h.
✓ The lane markings are clearly visible.
✓ In vehicles with manual gearbox, the vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h.

Function restriction

Travel Assist is only for support and does not absolve you from your responsibility for driving the vehicle.

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

› The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
› If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
› The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
› The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
› When the driving lane is too narrow.

In addition to these restrictions, also note the ACC restrictions » *page 195*.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Certain objects or markings on the road may be erroneously recognized as lane markings.
› Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

Settings

Activation

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Regulation with the current speed and adaptive lane assist are started.

Deactivation

› Depress the brake pedal.

Or:

› Set the ACC-lever in position **OFF** or **CANCEL** » *page 195*.

Additional settings are identical to ACC and Lane Assist.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Follow the troubleshooting instructions for Lane Assist » *page 198* and ACC » *page 196*.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Lane change assist system Side Assist

Usage

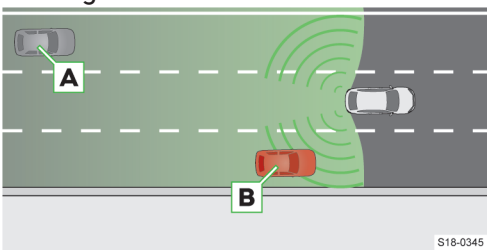
The system uses optical signals in the exterior mirror to alert the driver to vehicles that could be dangerous when changing lanes.

Functionality

The system monitors the area both beside and behind the vehicle.

The system warns of an approaching vehicle through the indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the vehicle side, where the vehicle is recognized.

Driving situations in which a system warning occurs



Your vehicle is being overtaken by vehicle A. The faster vehicle A approaches, the sooner the warning is given by the indicator light.

Vehicle B is overtaken by your vehicle at a speed that is faster by max. 10 km/h. If the speed is higher during the overtaking process, no warning will be provided by the indicator light.

Indicator light

■ **illuminates** – There is another vehicle behind your vehicle

■ **flashes** – There is another vehicle behind your vehicle, and the turn signal on the same side is switched on

For vehicles with Lane Assist, the indicator light will also flash if your vehicle crosses the lane markings in the direction of the approaching vehicle. The system will trigger a steering wheel vibration in this case.

For this, Lane Assist must be activated and the lane marking between the vehicles must be detected.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

The system cannot detect lane width. For this reason, it may, for example, draw attention to a vehicle in a distant lane in the following cases:

› The vehicle is driving on a road with narrow lanes or on the lane edge.

› The vehicle is taking a turn.

The system can draw attention to objects along the road, such as high guard rails or noise barriers.

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of a vehicle, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

› If the weather conditions are unfavourable.

› A very fast approaching vehicle.

› The vehicle is driving through a sharp bend or a roundabout.

Settings

In the instrument cluster display

In the menu *Assist systems*.

In Infotainment

In the menu **MENU** > ⚙ > *All assistance systems* > .

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Video – Lane change assist Side Assist

Side Assist – Activation

http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-kodiaq-side-assist

Traffic Sign Recognition

Usage

The road sign recognition shows road signs in the display of the instrument cluster. This also indicates exceeding the speed limit.

⚠ WARNING

The following always has priority over the traffic signs shown in the display:

› Traffic signs in the traveled route section

› A speed limit stipulated by law, which is not implemented by any traffic signs in the route section traveled through

Functionality

Displayed road signs

› Speed limits
› Overtaking prohibited
› Driving bans – one-way traffic
› Additional characters, e.g. speed limit in wet conditions

Towing a trailer

If a trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket, trailer-relevant road signs are also displayed.

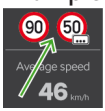
Driving on roads without speed limits

If you are on a road with no speed limits, the road signs will appear in the display.

Example of road sign display



Example of additional characters



Example of several simultaneously recognised road signs.

ⓘ At the same time, a red display regarding the speed limit appears in the speedometer.

Speed units

The speed indications in the road signs shown refer to the speed units that are common in the country.

For example, the display may refer to 30 km/h or 30 mph depending on the country.

Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
› The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
› If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
› The vehicle is moving at high speed.
› The road signs are hidden, damaged, or are non-standard.
› The road signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
› The navigation map documents are not up-to-date or not available.

Settings

Activation / deactivation and setting

In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > .

■ *Traffic Sign Recognition*
  › *Show in instrument cluster* – Activation/deactivation of the additional road signs in the display of the instrument cluster
  › *Speed warning:* – Configures a warning when the speed limit is exceeded
  › *Warning at over* – Increases the speed limit for the warning when exceeding the permitted speed
■ *Trailer detection*
  › *Show road signs relevant to trailers* Activation/deactivation of the display of road signs relevant to trailers
  › *Tap on maximum speed for trailers* – Setting the speed limits for trailer operation

Video – Dynamic Road Sign Display

Dynamic Road Sign Display – functioning
http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-kodiaq-traffic-sign-recognition

Crew Protect Assist

Usage

The system of proactive occupant protection triggers measures to protect vehicle occupants in dangerous situations.

Functionality

If the system evaluates the situation as critical, it triggers the following safety measures:

› The hazard warning lights are switched on.
› Open windows are closed except for a small gap.
› The sliding/tilting roof is closed.
› The front seat belts are tightened on the body.

ⓘ The system response depends on the selected driving mode.

Risk of frontal impact

Applies to vehicles with the Front Assist system.

The system triggers safety measures when it detects the impending danger of a frontal impact.

Risk of rear impact

Applies to vehicles with the lane change assist Side Assist.

The system triggers safety measures when it detects the impending danger of a rear impact.

Driver inactivity hazard

Applies to vehicles with assist systems for emergency situations.

The system triggers safety measures when it detects the impending danger if the driver is inactive.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

- When deactivated in the infotainment in the menu **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* >
- When deactivating the ASR or activating the ESC Sport
- When reversing
- If there is a malfunction in the ESC, reversible seat belt or airbag system
- If there is a malfunction or limitation of the Front Assist system
- If there is a malfunction or restriction of the lane change assist system Side Assist
- If there is a malfunction or restriction of the Emergency Assist emergency assist systems

Settings

Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation

In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > .

Troubleshooting

Crew Protect Assist faulty

illuminates together with ⚠
Message concerning unavailability or functional restriction

- Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driver Alert

Functionality

Driver Alert evaluates the steering behaviour. If it detects fatigue in the driver, a break is recommended. In the display of the instrument cluster, the following symbol lights up from the isolation box.

⚠ WARNING

There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Resetting the break recommendation

The break recommendation is reset in the following cases:

- The vehicle stops and the ignition is switched off
- The vehicle stops, the seat belt is removed and the driver's door is opened
- The vehicle stops for more than 15 minutes

ⓘ In some situations, the system may erroneously issue a break recommendation.

Operating conditions

✓ Driving speed between 60-200 km/h.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** > > *All assistance systems* > .

Video – fatigue detection assistant Driver Alert

Driver Alert – Activation

http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals-kodiaq-driver-alert

Emergency situation assist systemEmergency Assist

Usage

The assist systems for emergencies detect inactivity of the driver, which, for example, can be caused by a sudden loss of consciousness. The system then performs measures as safely as possible to decelerate the vehicle to a stop.

The assist systems are only available for vehicles with an automatic gearbox.

Functionality

When the assist system detects inactivity on the part of the driver

- An acoustic warning signal sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.
- If, after repeated warnings, the driver does not take over the steering, the hazard warning lights are switched on and the vehicle automatically brakes.
- After the vehicle has come to a standstill, the parking brake is switched on.

Interruption of automatic braking

- By pressing the brake or accelerator pedal
- By actively steering

Operating conditions

✓ Lane Assist or Travel Assist is activated and the boundary lines of the traffic lane are recognised.
✓ ACC is activated.

Settings

Automatic activation
The Assistant is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Hill descent assistant

Functionality
The Hill Hold Control helps to maintain a constant speed when driving downhill through automatic brake interventions.

The system also works when driving in neutral or when reverse gear is engaged.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of an accident!
The system cannot properly fulfil its function on slushy soil for physical reasons, e.g. ice or mud.

Status display in the instrument cluster display
lit up in grey – the system is activated

lit up white / green - the system intervenes

Change speed
The driving speed can be changed by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal. After releasing the pedal, the assist system maintains the current speed.

Operating conditions
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ Offroad is activated.
- ✓ The slope is at least 10 %.
- ✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is pressed.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is max. 30 km/h.

Settings

Automatic activation
The system will be automatically activated when you turn on Offroad mode.

Activation/deactivation
In Infotainment, in the following menu:

MENU > >

Or:

CAR >

Park Assist systems

Park Pilot parking aid

Functionality

If an obstacle is detected, the Infotainment will display a visible message and an audible signal will sound.

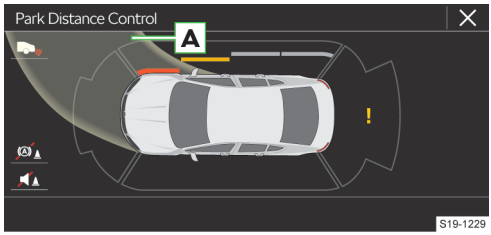
The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. At a distance of less than 30 cm from the obstacle, a continuous tone sounds.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 10 km/h in order to reduce the impact.

Automatic braking can be activated and deactivated in the infotainment.

Display

The recorded areas vary according to the equipment.



A Route controlled at the current steering angle

Acoustic signals on/off

One-time deactivation/activation of automatic braking

Change to the rear view camera display

! System fault

Obstacle at a distance of less than 30 cm

Obstacle at a distance of more than 30 cm

Obstacle outside the route

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is lower than 15 km/h.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Turn on/turn off

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button.

Automatic switch-on during forward travel

When approaching an obstacle at a speed of less than 10 km/h.

Automatic switch-on does not activate automatic braking.

Switching off

› Disengage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button.

Automatic switch off

The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.

Function restriction

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of an obstacle, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

- › If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- › The detected obstacles are moving.
- › Sensor signals are not reflected by the surface of the obstacles.
- › It is a small obstacle, e.g. a stone or a pillar.

Settings

The system settings are made in the infotainment system in the following menu:

CAR > > P

Or:

MENU > > > P

Troubleshooting

After switching on, an audible signal sounds for 3 seconds and there is no obstacle near the vehicle

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching on, the symbol P flashes in the button

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching on, not all scanned areas are displayed on the Infotainment screen

› Move the vehicle a few meters forwards or backwards.

› If the scanned areas are still not displayed, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Rear view camera

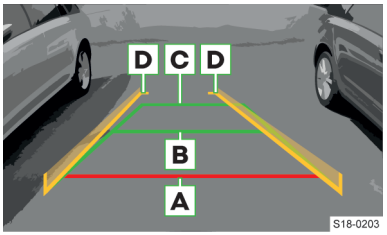
Functionality

When reversing, the area behind the vehicle is displayed in the Infotainment screen complete with orientation lines.

The camera is equipped with a cleaning system. Cleaning takes place automatically when the rear window is washed.

Orientation lines and functional surfaces

Orientation lines



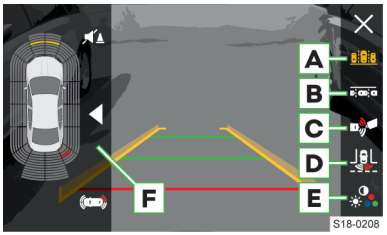
A Distance about 40 cm

B Distance about 100 cm

C Distance about 200 cm

D The lines indicate the track, which is controlled at the current steering angle. The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function surfaces



A Mode for transverse parking

B Mode for parallel parking

C Mode for driving up to a trailer/distance monitoring

D Mode for monitoring the area behind the vehicle (wide view)

E Brightness, contrast and colour settings of the screen

F Parking Aid View

◀/▶ Switch the view on / off

Full Screen

Switch audible parking signals on/off

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition on

✓ Driving speed less than 15 km/h

Operation

Switch on the system

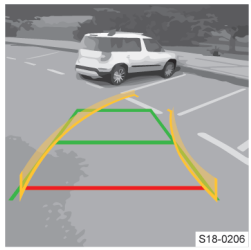
› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button.

When switching on, an alarm sounds and the symbol lights up in the button P from the isolation box.

Mode for transverse parking



› Stop the vehicle in front of a suitable parking space.

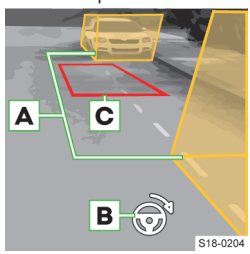
› Reverse so that the yellow lines lead into the parking space.

› At the latest, stop when the red line touches the rear boundary (e.g. curb).

Mode for parallel parking

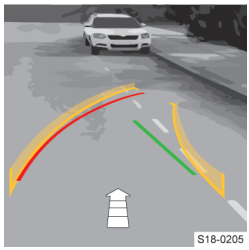
› In the screen, select the mode for parallel parking.

› Turn on the indicator light for the side on which you want to park.



› Stop the vehicle stop so that there are no obstructions in the gap between the auxiliary boxes **A** and the rear box does not extend over the side of the parking space (e.g. kerb).

› Turn the steering wheel in the recommended direction **B** until the red colour of the trapezoidal border **C** turns green.



- Hold the steering wheel in the adjusted position and reverse.
- Stop the vehicle if the green line overlaps with the lateral boundary of the parking space (e.g. the curb) or if STOP is displayed.
- Countersteer until the yellow lane line crosses the red line for the required lane orientation.
- Hold the steering wheel in the adjusted position and reverse.
- Stop the vehicle at a safe distance from the obstacle or when STOP is displayed.

Mode for driving up to a trailer/distance monitoring

The screen shows the area behind the vehicle in plan view.

On vehicles with a factory fitted tow-bar, this mode assists the driver when the vehicle is approaching a trailer draw bar. A line for approaching the trailer draw bar and lines for estimating distance are displayed on the screen.

For vehicles without a factory fitted tow bar, a line for monitoring the distance to obstacles is displayed on the screen at a distance of 40 cm behind the vehicle.

Mode for monitoring behind the vehicle

The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

Switch off the system

- Press the P button.

Or:

- For vehicles with an automatic gearbox, put the selector lever in the **P** position.

Automatic shut-off

The automatic system shut-off occurs when driving forward at a speed over 15 km/h.

Restriction

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items, such as thin posts, chain link fences, grilles or uneven road surfaces may not be properly displayed on the screen.

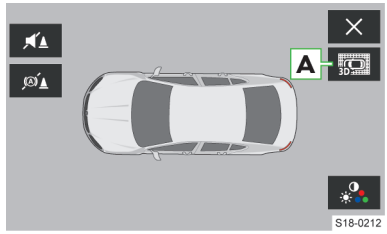
Area View environment overview

Usage

The area view assists the driver in parking and manoeuvring by displaying the vehicle area.

Overview

General overview

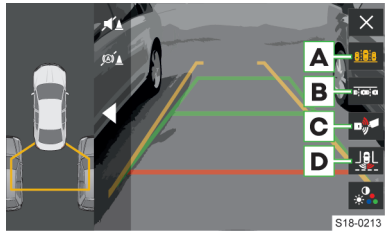


A 3D views:

- Top view
- View obliquely from above
- View from the side
- Overall view

By moving your finger across the screen, you can change the viewing angle.

Camera rear view



A Mode for transverse parking

B Mode for parallel parking

C Mode for driving up to a trailer/distance monitoring

D Mode for monitoring the area behind the vehicle (wide view)

Front camera view

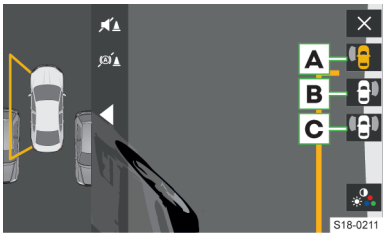


A Mode for transverse parking
The orientation lines are used for estimating distance as well as for displaying the route, which is controlled at the current steering angle.

B Mode for monitoring the area in front of the vehicle (wide view)
The area right in front of the vehicle is marked by the blue lines.

C Distance monitoring mode

Side camera view



A Left side

B Right side

C Left and right side

The yellow line is shown at a distance of about 40 cm from the vehicle.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ Driving speed less than 15 km/h

Operation

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button.

Selecting the camera image

The respective camera image is selected by touching the screen in the Infotainment in the area next to, in front of or behind the vehicle silhouette. The selected area is highlighted on the screen by a yellow border.

Switching off

› Press the P button.

Or:

› For vehicles with an automatic gearbox, put the selector lever in the **P** position.

Automatic shut-off

The automatic system shut-off occurs when driving forward at a speed over 15 km/h.

Restriction

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items, such as thin posts, chain link fences, grilles or uneven road surfaces may not be properly displayed.

Objects directly beside the corners of the vehicle may be outside the field of view of the cameras and may therefore not be displayed on the screen.

Troubleshooting

After switching on, the symbol P flashes in the button

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Rear Traffic Alert

Functionality

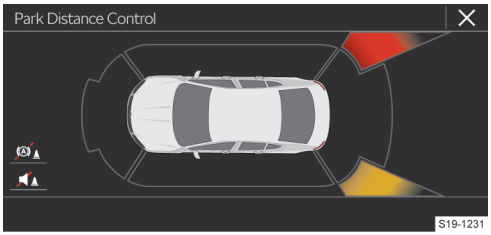


When reversing, the Rear Traffic Alert warns of approaching vehicles.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the vehicle is braked automatically at a speed below 10 km/h.

Vehicle with Parking Aid

If an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle, a graphical warning is displayed in the Infotainment. When reversing, a continuous tone sounds at the same time.



■ Vehicle in collision area - danger of collision!

■ Approaching vehicle

Vehicle without Parking Aid

If an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle, the a warning is displayed in the instrument cluster display, indicating to the driver to monitor the traffic behind. At the same time, an acoustic signal sounds.

Operating conditions

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

Manoeuvre Assist's functionality may be limited in unfavourable weather conditions.

Settings

Activation/deactivation in the instrument cluster display

In the menu *Assist systems*.

Activation/deactivation in Infotainment

In the following menu:

CAR > ⚙ > P

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > P

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Park steering assistant

Usage

Park Assist helps drivers park in parallel and perpendicular parking places and to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

Functionality

The system looks for a parking space and only takes over the steering during the parking procedure or when leaving a parking place. The driver operates the pedals and the shift lever/gear selector.

The system displays information and notes on the instrument cluster display.

If the system detects a risk of collision, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is lower than 7 km/h.

✓ The ASR is activated and there is no intervention.

✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Turn on/turn off

› Press the P button.

When the system is switched on, the symbol lights up in the button P.

Select the lane side for the parking procedure

The system automatically searches for a suitable parking space on the passenger side.

› Press the driver's side indicator to find a parking space on this side of the road.

Operation while searching for a parking space

› Drive past a number of parked vehicles at a distance of 0.5–1.5 m.

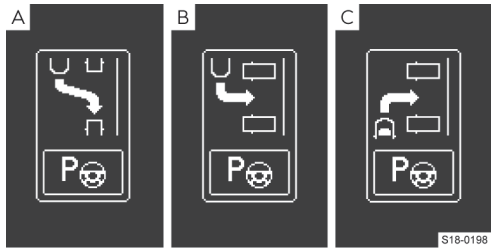
› To search for a parking space across the road, drive slower than 20 km/h.

› To search for a parking space along the road, drive slower than 40 km/h.

If the symbol ⊖ (km/h) appears in the display, reduce the driving speed. If the system finds a parking space, the display will show the recommended parking mode.

Changing the parking mode

If a suitable parking space is found, the following Park modes can be shown in the display.



A Park backwards longitudinally

B Park backwards crosswise

C Park forwards across

The parking mode can be changed by pressing the button P.

Press the button again P and the system is switched off.

› To return to the original recommended parking mode, press the button P again.

Before the parking process

› If a suitable parking space is found, stop and drive backwards or forwards as indicated by the arrow in the display.
› When a steering intervention message is displayed, release the steering wheel. The steering operation is taken over by the system.

Parking operation

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.
› Only operate the pedals and the shift / selector lever.
› Observe the area around the vehicle and drive backwards or forwards in accordance with the arrow in the display.
› As soon as the symbol appears in the display and an audible signal sounds, stop the vehicle. The steering wheel is taken over accordingly. The symbol goes out.
› Travel backwards or forwards in accordance with the arrow in the display.

As soon as the parking process is completed, the corresponding message is displayed and an audible signal sounds.

The parking procedure can be ended at any time by pressing the button P.

1 When partially parked in a suitable transverse parking space forward, press button P. The parking process is completed by the system.

Exiting a parking space

› Press the P button.
› Follow the instructions on the screen.

Automatic speed reduction

If a speed of 7 km/h is exceeded during the parking process, the system will reduce the speed.

Upon the speed being exceeded by 7 km/h a second time, the parking process is terminated.

Function restriction

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to use the Park Assist to initiate a parking manoeuvre. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

Do not use the Park Assist in the following cases:

› The vehicle is moving on unpaved or slippery surfaces.
› Snow chains or a spare wheel are mounted on the vehicle.
› If the system offers an inappropriate parking space for parking.
› The overhang angle for parking in the parking space is too large.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Stop the engine and start again.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Incorrect resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking procedure depends on the size of the wheels. If other wheels approved by ŠKODA AUTO are fitted, have the system readjusted by a specialist garage.

Trailer assist trailer manoeuvring aid

Usage

The trailer manoeuvring aid helps the driver when reversing with a trailer.

What you should be mindful of

Use the system extremely carefully in the following cases:

› The vehicle is moving on unpaved or slippery surfaces.
› If snow chains or a spare wheel are mounted on the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

The system does not warn of obstacles or monitors the area behind the trailer. The driver must check themselves as to whether there are no obstacles in the area behind the trailer.

Functionality

The rear camera monitors the bending angle of the trailer drawbar. The system executes appropriate steering movements to position the trailer in the desired direction. The driver operates the pedals and the shift lever/gear selector.

The driver sets the desired direction with the external mirror knob.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is lower than 5 km/h.
✓ The ASR is activated and there is no intervention.
✓ The luggage compartment lid is closed.
✓ The driver's door is closed.

- ✓ It is a uniaxial or biaxial trailer hitched without a steered axle.
- ✓ The trailer drawbar is not covered.
- ✓ The trailer is not veering too much.

Operation

Before switching on

› Make several turns or cornering with the trailer attached.

The system determines the drawbar length in order to use the maximum yaw rate.

Switch on the system

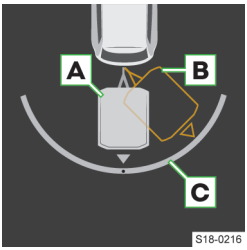
› Stop the vehicle.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Release the steering wheel and press the P button.

Manoeuvring



› Tilt the exterior mirror knob to the right or left.

The setting menu is shown on the instrument cluster display.



- A Current trailer position
- B Target trailer position
- C Manoeuvring angular dimension

› Tilt the knob to the right or left to set the trailer's target position.
› Start reversing.

The setting can be corrected when reversing.

› Stop as soon as the trailer's target position is reached.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.
› Only operate the pedals and the shift / selector lever.

Straighten the trailer

› Tilt the knob backwards.
› Carefully reverse and drive forwards until the desired position of the trailer combination is achieved.

Switch off the system

› Press the P button.

Automatic system shut-off

The system is automatically switched off and the brakes are intervened if the following situations occur during the maneuvering process:

› The P button is pressed.
› The driver's door is opened.
› The steering wheel is gripped.
› Travelling at high speed.
› The trailer veered too much.

Engine, exhaust system and fuel

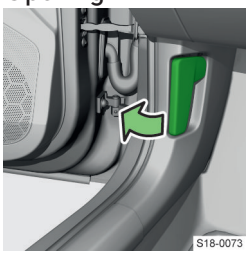
Bonnet

Opening the bonnet

Before opening

› Make sure the windscreen wiper arms are folded down onto the windscreen.
› Keep everyone away from the engine compartment.

Opening



› Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel.



› Release the lock.
› Lift the bonnet so that the gas pressure springs hold it open.

Closing

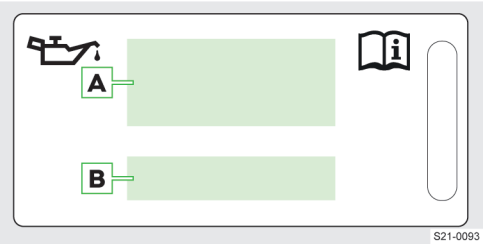
› Pull the flap down.
› Close the flap with a slight push from a distance of about 20 cm.
› Check that the bonnet is closed.

⚠ NOTICE

› Do not press down on an unclosed bonnet.
› Open and close the flap again.

Engine oil

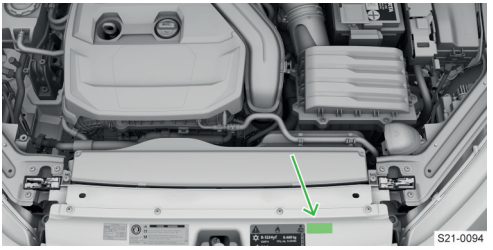
Specification



Engine oil sticker

A Engine oil specifications
B Engine oil viscosity

The engine oil sticker is located in the front of the engine compartment.



Applies to vehicles with an engine oil sticker:

If the engine oil needs to be topped up, use the oil listed on the sticker in the front of the engine compartment.

Applies to vehicles without an engine oil sticker:

You can obtain information about the engine oil specification prescribed for your vehicle from a specialist garage. If the engine oil needs to be topped up, use this oil.

ⓘ When using the prescribed engine oil, the engine oil level can be adjusted as often as required.

In an emergency

If engine oil of the prescribed specification is not available, engine oil with following specifications can

be topped up once up to **max. 0.5 l** in an emergency until the next regular oil change:

› **Vehicles with petrol engine**: VW 504 00, ACEA C3 and API SP, viscosity 0W-30
› **Vehicles with diesel engine**: VW 507 00 and ACEA C3, viscosity 0W-30

ŠKODA AUTO recommends that **oil change** subsequently be carried out by a specialist company » *page 9*.

Checking the fill level and topping up

Depending on driving style and operating conditions, the engine consumes some oil, up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Consumption may be higher over the next 5000 km.

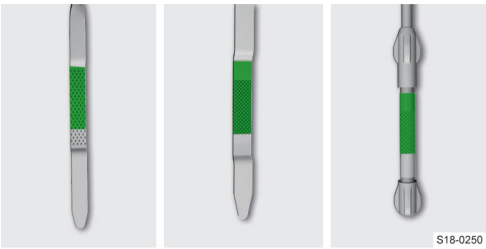
› Check the oil level at regular intervals.

Test conditions

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface
✓ The parked engine is warm

Checking the level

› Wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the oil sump.
› Remove the dipstick and wipe with a clean cloth.
› Insert the dipstick as far as it will go and pull it out again.
› Read the oil level and push the dipstick back in again.



› The oil level must be within the marked range.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› The oil level must not be outside the marked range.
› If the oil level is **below** the marked area, stop driving, switch off the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.
› If the oil level is **above** the marked area, stop driving, switch off the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.
› Do not use any oil additives.

Refilling

› Unscrew the cover of the engine oil filler opening.
› Top up the oil to the correct specification » *page 210* in 0.5 litre portions.
› Check the oil level.
› Screw on the cover of the engine oil filler opening.

ⓘ NOTICE

ŠKODA AUTO recommends use of approved engine oils in accordance with the relevant VW standard. Use of engine oils that do not comply with this regulation could damage the engine.

ŠKODA AUTO recommends engine oils from the product range of ŠKODA original parts.

Changing

ŠKODA AUTO recommends that **oil change** be carried out by a specialist company » *page 9*.

Troubleshooting

Engine oil pressure too low

flashes, lights up at the same time ⚠

or

flashes, lights up at the same time ⚠

› Check the engine oil level.

The oil level is OK, the warning light continues to flash:

› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine oil level too low

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding required engine oil top up

› Check the engine oil level, top up with oil if required.

Engine oil level too high

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the need to reduce the engine oil level

› Check the engine oil level.

The oil level is too high:

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine oil level sensor impaired

illuminates together with ⚠

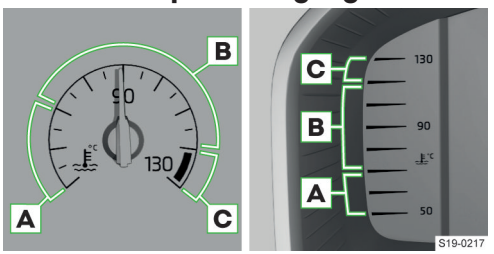
or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the engine oil sensor

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Coolant

Coolant temperature gauge



A Cold area
› Avoid high engine speed.
B Operating range
C High temperature range

Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface
✓ The engine is turned off and cooled

Checking the level



The fill level must be within the marked range.

› If the fill level is below the mark **MIN**, top up the coolant.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of damage to the engine compartment!
› Do not top up the coolant above the marked area. The coolant could be forced out of the cooling system when heated.

ⓘ NOTICE

There must be a small quantity of coolant in the tank.
› Do not add coolant when the tank is empty.
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Refilling

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!
The cooling system is pressurised.
› Do not open the cap of the coolant expansion tank while the engine is warm. Let the engine cool down.
› Place a wipe on the lid of the tank and carefully unscrew the lid.
› Refill with coolant of the correct specification.
› Screw on the cap until it clicks into place.

Specification

To refill the coolant additive use G12evo (TL 774 L).

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine!
Adding coolant that does not conform to the correct specification can reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

Troubleshooting

Coolant level is too low

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message concerning the required coolant check

› Check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is OK:

› Check the fuse for radiator fan, replace if required » *page 221, Replacing a fuse*.

If the fuse is OK but the indicator light lights up again:

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Report regarding the engine overheating

› Stop driving.
› Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
› Drive on after the indicator light goes out.

Engine fault

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Stop driving!

› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

There is no coolant of the correct specification available

› Top up with distilled or demineralised water.

› Have the correct coolant mixing ratio corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Another substance was used for topping up, other than distilled or demineralised water:

› Have the coolant changed by a specialist garage.

It is not possible to top up with a sufficient amount of coolant

› Stop driving.

› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

There is a loss of coolant

› Top up the coolant and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine electronics

Troubleshooting

Fault in the engine control system

EPC illuminates

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Diesel engine control faulty

flashes

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Diesel preheating system faulty

illuminates, or does not illuminate after the ignition is switched on

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Particle filter

Troubleshooting

Clogged particle filter

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Clean the filter.

ⓘ When the indicator light is on, it must be assumed that fuel consumption will be higher, engine power will be reduced, and the START-STOP function will not be available.

Filter cleaning

Conditions for cleaning

✓ The engine is warm.

✓ For vehicles with manual transmission, observe the gear recommendation shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

Procedure for vehicles with diesel engines

› Drive at a speed of at least 60 km/h at engine speeds of at least 2000 rpm.

If the filter is successfully cleaned, the indicator light goes off. or .

If the indicator light or does not go off within 40 minutes, no filter cleaning was performed.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Procedure for vehicles with petrol engines

› Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h at engine speeds between 3000-5000 rpm.

› Release the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle roll with the gear engaged for a few seconds.

› Repeat this procedure several times.

If the filter is successfully cleaned, the indicator light goes off. or .

If the indicator light or does not go off within 30 minutes, no filter cleaning was performed.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Exhaust control system

Troubleshooting

Emission control system faulty

illuminates

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Fuel filter

Troubleshooting

Water in the diesel fuel filter

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Radiator blinds

Usage

The radiator blinds reduce emissions harmful to the environment and CO_2-Emissions and saving fuel.

Troubleshooting

If the display of the instrument cluster shows a message relating to the function restriction of the blinds, the maximum speed of the vehicle is limited to 160 km/h.

The cause may be ice or snow in the area around the blinds. After the ice or snow has thawed, the blinds are functional again.

› Should the impairment not be due to ice or snow, assistance from a specialist should be sought.

Fuel filler flap

Opening the fuel filler flap



› Press the flap and open it.

AdBlue®

Regulations

Only use AdBlue® that corresponds with the ISO 22241-1 standard.

Do not add additives to AdBlue®.

AdBlue® is also known as AUS 32 (Aqueous Urea Solution) or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

Functionality

To reduce pollutant emissions, a urea solution is automatically injected into the exhaust system – AdBlue®.

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below -11 C. The system function is ensured by automatic heating.

Checking the fill level and topping up

Checking the level

The AdBlue® level is monitored automatically.

The range with the existing AdBlue® tank fill level as well as the indication of the minimum and maximum AdBlue® top up quantity can be viewed in the driving data in the instrument cluster display under the menu item .

If the range with the existing AdBlue® tank fill level drops to 0 km, it is not possible to start the engine.

› If possible, top up AdBlue® to the maximum level.

Requirements for refilling

- ✓ Vehicle unlocked
- ✓ Stationary heating switched off
- ✓ Ignition off
- ✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface

Methods of refilling

› With the fuel nozzle at the petrol station

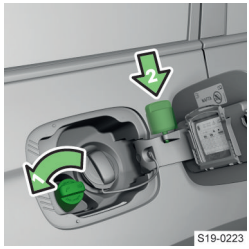
› With the refill bottle or from the canister

› At a specialist garage

For refilling using refill bottles or canisters, we recommend using refill bottles and canisters from ŠKODA original parts. The refill bottles are equipped with overfill protective function.

Refilling

› Open the tank flap.



› Turn the tank cap and remove it.
› Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
› Refill AdBlue®.
› Do not refill if the AdBlue® tank is full.

The AdBlue® tank is full when the fuel nozzle switches off or as soon as no more AdBlue® flows out of the refill bottle.

› Place the tank cap on the filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
› Close the tank flap and click into place.
› Switch the ignition on for 30 seconds so that the system can recognise the refilling.

The engine can then be started and the journey can be continued.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the system for injecting AdBlue® in to the exhaust system!

› Do not exceed the maximum refill quantity specified in the instrument cluster.
› The service life of AdBlue® is 4 years.

If the tank contents are not consumed within this period, have them replaced by a specialist garage.

› When topping up, do not use AdBlue® that is past its expiry date.

Troubleshooting

AdBlue®-Level too low

or or or illuminates

› Refill AdBlue® » page 214.

AdBlue®-system malfunction.

or or illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Operation at very low temperatures

During long periods of cold weather with temperatures below -11° C and in very unfavourable circumstances, it is possible that AdBlue® freezes in the tank. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display. During this time, there is no reduction in pollutants.

› We recommend parking the vehicle in an environment with a temperature higher than -11° C, e.g. in a garage.

If enough AdBlue® has thawed in the tank, the message disappears.

Technical data

AdBlue®-tank filling level is about 18 litres.

Petrol

What you should be mindful of

⚠ DANGER

Risk of death!
Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never empty the fuel tank completely!**

If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for vehicle operation, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will let you know whether a suitable fuel is offered in the associated country.

Regulations

Standards

Petrol must comply with European standard EN 228 (in Russia, GOST 32513-2013).

Only use **unleaded petrol** that contains **max** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

ⓘ We recommend using petrol with additives, which is available at petrol stations at the petrol pumps.

Octane number

Use the petrol with the octane number prescribed for your vehicle.

Petrol with an octane number that is one **higher** than the one prescribed for your vehicle can be used without restriction.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› When petrol with a lower than the prescribed octane is used, only continue driving at mid-range engine speeds and with minimal strain on the engine.
› Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
› Do not use petrol with an octane number that **lower** than **91**!

Prescribed petrol 95 / min. 92 or 93 RON / ROZ

We recommend using petrol **95** ROZ.

Optionally, the petrol **92** or. **93** ROZ can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, **91** RON petrol may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Specified petrol is unleaded, min. 95 RON / ROZ

Use min. **95** ROZ petrol.

Using higher octane petrol than 95 RON may result in improved performance and lower fuel consumption.

In an **emergency 91**. **92** or. **93** RON may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Prescribed petrol 98 / (95) RON / ROZ

We recommend using petrol **98** ROZ.

95 RON petrol may be used as an option (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency 91**. **92** or. **93** RON may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Additive

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

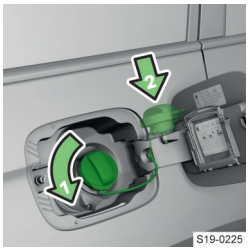
- Do not use petrol containing metal-based additives, e.g. manganese, iron, lead, and do not use, for example, any LRP-petrol - lead replacement petrol.
- Do not add any additional additives to the petrol in accordance with EN 228.
- If petrol is not used in accordance with EN 228, we recommend obtaining information from a specialist company regarding the possible use of petrol additives approved by ŠKODA AUTO.

Requirements for refuelling

- ✓ Vehicle unlocked
- ✓ Stationary heating switched off
- ✓ Ignition off

Refilling

- Open the tank flap.



- Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
- Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
- Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
- Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle switches off.
- Remove the fuel nozzle and put it back on the petrol pump.
- Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
- Close the tank flap and click into place.

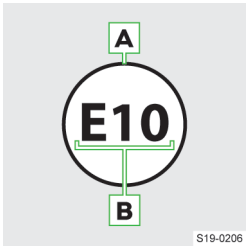
Troubleshooting

If fuel other than unleaded petrol has been used as per standards applicable to your vehicle

- Neither start the engine nor switch on the ignition.
- Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



Example of a vehicle data sticker

A Unleaded petrol
B Organic share as a percentage

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 58 litres, including a reserve of approx. 7 litres.

illuminates - the fuel level has reached the reserve area.

Diesel

What you should be mindful of

DANGER

Risk of death!
Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› **Never empty the fuel tank completely!**

If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for vehicle operation, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will let you know whether a suitable fuel is offered in the associated country.

Regulations

Standards

The diesel fuel must meet the European standard EN 590 (in Russia GOST 32511-2013 or GOST R 55475-2013) correspond.

Only use a **diesel fuel** that contains a **maximum** of 7 % biodiesel **(B7)**.

We recommend using diesel with additives, which is available at petrol stations at the petrol pumps.

Operation in different weather conditions

Only use a diesel fuel according to the current or the expected weather conditions.

Additive

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› Do not use RME biofuel, even as a diesel fuel additive.

› Do not add any additional additives to the diesel in accordance with EN 590.

› If diesel is not used in accordance with EN 590, we recommend obtaining information from a specialist company regarding the possible use of diesel additives approved by ŠKODA AUTO.

Requirements for refuelling

✓ Vehicle unlocked

✓ Stationary heating switched off

✓ Ignition off

Refilling

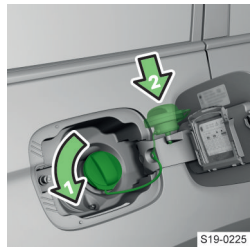
Misfuelling protection

The fuel filler neck on diesel vehicles may be equipped with a misfuelling protection device.

In some countries, the diameter of the diesel fuel nozzle may be identical to that of the petrol nozzle. Before driving in these countries, have the protection device removed by a specialist garage.

Refilling

› Open the tank flap.



› Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.

› Place the tank cap on the tank flap.

› Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.

› Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle switches off.

› Remove the fuel nozzle and put it back on the petrol pump.

› Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.

› Close the tank flap and click into place.

Troubleshooting

If fuel other than diesel has been used as per applicable standards

› Neither start the engine nor switch on the ignition.

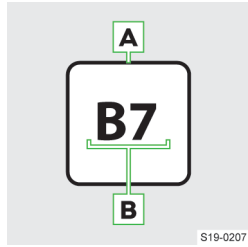
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

The diesel nozzle cannot be inserted correctly into the tank filler neck

› If the nozzle cannot be inserted correctly into the tank filler neck, move it slightly back and forth when plugging it in.

Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



A Diesel

B Organic share as a percentage



The diesel fuel must meet the European standard EN 15940.

Synthetic diesel fuel

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 58 litres, including a reserve of approx. 7 litres.



Illuminates – the diesel supply has reached the reserve area.

12 volt vehicle battery and fuses

12 volt vehicle battery

What you should be mindful of

Explanation of the warning symbols on the 12-volt vehicle battery

Wear safety goggles!

The battery acid of the 12-volt vehicle battery is very caustic. Wear gloves and eye protection.

Keep fire, sparks and open light away from the 12 volt vehicle battery! Do not smoke!

When charging the 12 volt vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced!

Keep children away from the 12 volt vehicle battery!

Note the instructions in the owner's manual!

Functionality – Protection against discharge of the 12 volt vehicle battery

Possible causes for the discharge of the 12 volt vehicle battery

- Worn 12 volt vehicle battery
- Frequent short journeys
- Low temperatures
- Vehicle stationary for a long period of time

Automatic system-related discharge protection measure with regard to the 12 volt vehicle battery

- Increasing the engine idling speed
- Switching off certain consumers or limiting their power

Recommended measure to be taken when vehicle is stationary for more than three weeks

- Disconnect the ⊖ terminal of the 12 volt vehicle battery.

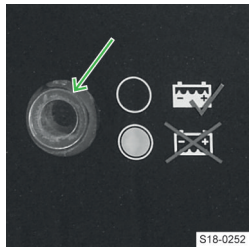
Checking and charging the 12 volt vehicle battery

Checking the condition

The condition of the 12 volt vehicle battery is checked by a specialist garage during servicing.

Checking the acid level

Applies to a 12 volt vehicle battery with an acid level indicator.



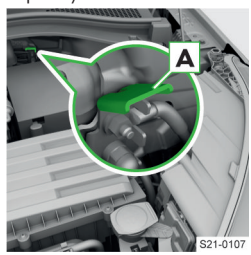
- Tap on the indicator before testing, to clear air bubbles.
- Black colour – the acid level is OK.
- Colourless or pale yellow colour – acid level is too low, the 12 volt vehicle battery must be replaced.

Requirements for charging a 12 volt vehicle battery

- ✓ Ignition off
- ✓ Power consumers switched off

12 volt vehicle battery charging

To charge the 12 volt vehicle battery fully, set a charging current of max. of 0.1 times the battery capacity.



Earth point

- Connect the ⊕ terminal of the charger to the ⊕ terminal of the 12 volt vehicle battery.
- Connect the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the earth point A.
- Plug the charger's power cable into the socket and switch on the device.
- After charging, switch off the charger and unplug the power cable from the socket.
- Disconnect the charger terminals from the 12 volt vehicle battery.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion!

› During charging, hydrogen is released. An explosion can also be caused by sparks, for example, when disconnecting or loosening the cable connector.
› Never charge a frozen or thawed 12 volt vehicle battery.
› Do not carry out the so-called quick charging of the 12 volt vehicle battery yourself, but have it carried out by a specialist garage.

ⓘ NOTICE
A flat 12 volt vehicle battery can freeze easily!

Troubleshooting

The 12 volt vehicle battery does not charge while the engine is running


or illuminates
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine fault


or illuminates
› Stop driving!
› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Disconnecting, connecting and replacing

⚠ CAUTION
Risk of fire!
› Do not mix up the connection cables.

Disconnecting

› Close the electric boot lid, the tilting/sliding sunroof, all windows and the electric sunblind.
› Switch off the ignition and any connected power consumers.
› Disconnect the ⊖ terminal and then the ⊕ terminal.

Connecting

› Connect the ⊕ terminal and then the ⊖ terminal.

After switching on the ignition, the indicator lights light up from the isolation box.

› If, after a short distance, one of the above-mentioned indicator lights does not go out, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Operate these vehicle functions after disconnecting and connecting the 12 volt vehicle battery

› Window operation » page 35.
› Operation of the tilting/sliding sunroof » page 36.
› Sunblind » page 36.

Changing

The new 12 volt vehicle battery must have the same parameters as the original battery. Have the replacement carried out only by a specialist garage.

Using the jump-starting cable

Usage

With the help of jump start cables, a vehicle with a discharged or defective 12-volt vehicle battery can be started using the 12-volt vehicle battery of another vehicle.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING
Risk of explosion and chemical burns!
› Do not jump start with the 12 volt vehicle battery of another vehicle under the following conditions:
  › The discharged 12 volt vehicle battery is frozen. A discharged 12 volt vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.
  › The acid level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low » page 219.

Use jump leads with a sufficient cross section and insulated terminal clamps.

The rated voltage of both batteries must be 12V. The capacity (in Ah) of the 12 volt charging vehicle battery must not be significantly lower than the capacity of the discharged 12 volt vehicle battery.

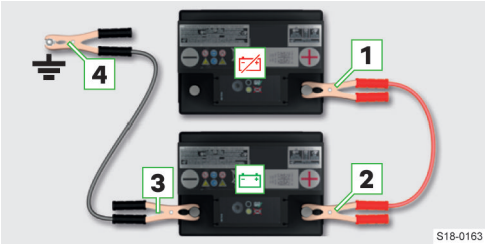
Use another vehicle's 12 volt vehicle battery to operate the vehicle

⚠ WARNING
Risk of injury! Danger of damage to vehicle!
› Lay the jump start cables so that they cannot become caught by rotating parts in the engine compartment.

ⓘ NOTICE
Short circuit!
› The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must not touch each other.
› The cable connected to the positive pole of the 12 volt vehicle battery must not come into contact with electrically conductive vehicle parts.
› The vehicles must not touch each other.

Connect the jump start cable

› Switch off the ignition.
› Connect the terminal clamps of the jump start cables in the order shown in the legend.



discharged 12 volt vehicle battery

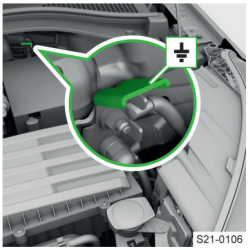
current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery

1 ⊕-pole of the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery

2 ⊕-pole of the current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery

3 ⊖-pole of the current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery (or earth point)

4 ⏚ Earth point of the vehicle with discharged 12 volt vehicle battery



Earth point

Start the engine

› Start the engine of the current-giving vehicle and let it idle (applies to vehicles with combustion engine)

Or:

› Switch on the electric drive of the vehicle supplying power (applies to vehicles with an electric motor).

› Start up the vehicle with the discharged 12 volt vehicle battery.

› If the engine of the vehicle with the discharged 12 volt vehicle battery does not start within 10 seconds, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

Disconnecting the cable

› Disconnect the cables in the reverse order from connection.

Fuses

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

Fire hazard and risk of damage to the electrical system.

› Do not repair fuses or replace them with stronger fuses.

› Replace the defective fuse with a new fuse with the same amperage.

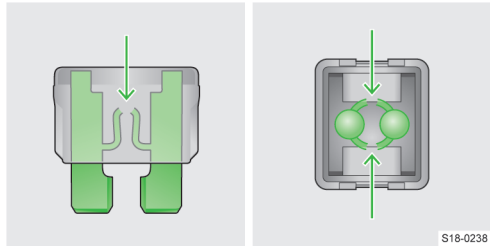
› We recommend using replacement fuses from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range. These guarantee reliable and safe protection of the vehicle's electric system.

› If a newly inserted fuse blows again, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ⓘ One fuse may belong to several consumers. One consumer may have several fuses.

Functionality

Fuses protect the vehicle systems from damage caused by excessive current. The fuse blows when the current is exceeded.



Blown fuse

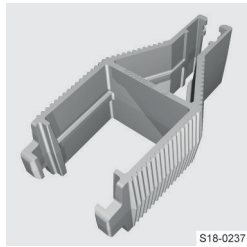
Conditions for replacing a fuse

✓ Ignition off

✓ Driver door opened

✓ All consumers switched off

Replacing a fuse



› Replace the fuse with the clamp located on the inside of the fuse box cover in the engine compartment.

› Use the appropriate end of the clamp according to the fuse dimensions.

Fuses in the dash panel

Overview

Access to fuses – left-hand drive

› Open the storage compartment on the driver's side.



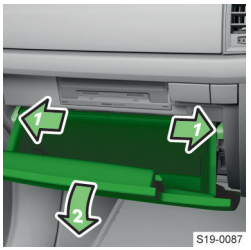
› Press the button and open the tray.
› Change the fuse.
› Close the storage compartment.

Access to fuses – right-hand drive

› Open the storage compartment on the passenger's side.

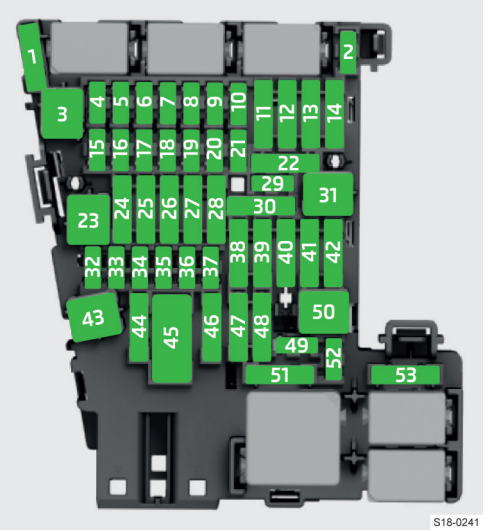


› Loosen the brake rod of the storage compartment.



› Press the locking lugs, the storage compartment folds down.
› Change the fuse.
› Insert and lock the brake rod.
› Close the storage compartment.

Fuses overview



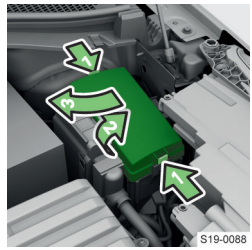
Fuse number	Consumer
1	SCR (AdBlue®)
2	Heated steering wheel
3	Not used
4	Alarm system
5	Databus
6	Automatic gearbox
7	Air conditioning, Auxiliary heating receiver, Front and rear window heating, Tyre pressure monitor
8	Light switch, rain sensor, parking brake, ambient lighting, sensor of the alarm system, headlight
9	Control lever under the steering wheel
10	Infotainment screen
11	Light – left side
12	Infotainment
13	Left side seat belt pretensioner
14	Air blower for air conditioning, heating
15	Electric steering lock
16	USB ports, diagnostics connector, Phonebox
17	Instrument cluster, emergency call
18	Rear view camera, Area View
19	KESSY (keyless locking and starting system)

Fuse number	Consumer
20	SCR (AdBlue®), Vacuum pump for the brake system
21	All-wheel drive
22	Tow hitch
23	Panorama sliding/tilting roof
24	Light – right side
25	Central locking - (front and rear door left), power windows - (left), left external mirror (heating, folding function, mirror surface adjustment)
26	Heating of the front seats
27	Interior lighting
28	Tow hitch
29	USB charging function – at the rear and on the interior mirror
30	Shock absorber setting
31	Opening the boot lid
32	Parking aid, Park Assist, "blind spot" detection
33	Airbags
34	Air conditioning, reversing light switch, interior mirror with automatic dimming, heated seats, parking brake, light switches, bar with buttons
35	Diagnostic connection, camera, radar sensor
36	LED headlight on the right
37	LED headlight on the left
38	Tow hitch
39	Central locking - (front and rear door right), power windows - (right), right external mirror - (heating, folding function, mirror surface adjustment)
40	12-volt power outlets
41	Right side seat belt pretensioner
42	Luggage compartment cover lock, headlight washers, front and rear window washer
43	Music amplifier
44	Tow hitch
45	Electrical operation of driver's seat
46	230 volt socket
47	Rear window wiper
48	Sport sound generator
49	Engine starting, clutch pedal switch
50	Not used
51	Seat heating - rear
52	Front seat ventilation, footwell lighting
53	Heated rear window

Fuses in the engine compartment

Overview

Access to the fuses



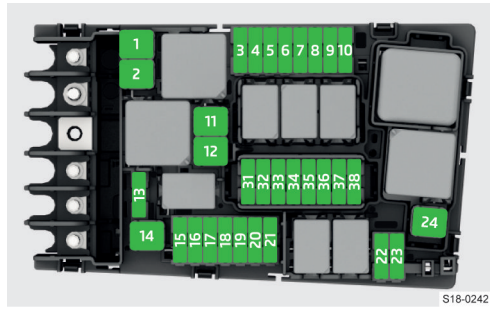
- Simultaneously press the locking buttons on the fuse box cover and open up the cover.
- Remove the cover.
- Change the fuse.
- Fit the cover and click into place.

NOTICE

Danger of water entering the fuse box.

- Fit the cover correctly and click into place securely.

Fuses overview



Fuse number	Consumer
1	ESC assist system, parking brake
2	ESC assist system
3	Engine control system
4	Radiator fan, fuel pressure regulator, electric auxiliary heater, glow plug system, air flow sensor, brake system, oil level and oil temperature sensor, ignition, engine components
5	Engine components
6	Brake sensor

Fuse number	Consumer
7	Coolant pump, exhaust flap, heat for crankcase ventilation, cooling louvres, engine components
8	Lambda probe, NOx sensor and particle sensor
9	Coolant pump, ignition, engine components
10	Fuel pump
11	Additional electrical heating, heated windscreen
12	Electric auxiliary heater
13	Oil pump for automatic gearbox
14	Not used
15	Horn
16	Ignition, switchable air conditioning compressor, air conditioning system
17	ESC assist system, engine control unit, main relay coil
18	Data bus, 12 volt battery data module
19	Windscreen wiper
20	Not used
21	Automatic gearbox
22	Engine control system
23	Starter
24	Electric auxiliary heater
31	Not used
32	Not used
33	Not used
34	Not used
35	Not used
36	Left headlight with adaptive functions
37	Auxiliary heating
38	Right headlight with adaptive functions

Wheels

Tyres and rims

What you should be mindful of

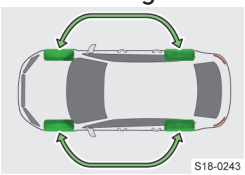
NOTICE

- Protect tyres from contact with lubricants and fuel.
- Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres without rims should be stored in an upright position.
- Alloy rims can be damaged by grit.
- Do not use light alloy rims with a ground surface in wintry weather conditions or with snow chains

Causes of uneven tyre wear

- Improper tyre pressure
- Driving style, e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration and deceleration
- Wheel alignment errors
- Incorrect wheel balancing

Wheel changes



For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10,000 km according to the schedule.

Advice for tyre assembly

- With directional tyres, observe the correct direction of rotation. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre. The directional tyre tread pattern usually appears with winter and all-season tyres.
- Always replace the tyres by the axle.

Additional information

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle.

Approved tyre sizes are specified in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity, in the so-called COC Document.

The declaration of conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner (valid for some countries and some models).

Wheels 8,5Jx20 ET38 with the tyres 255/40 R 20

A vehicle equipped with these wheels and tyres at the factory also has appropriate widening elements for the use of these wheels and tyres.

If you would like to have these wheels and tyres retrofitted, find out at a ŠKODA Partner about the possible retrofitting of your vehicle with the widening elements for the use of these wheels and tyres.

Overview of tyre labelling

Explanation of tyre markings

E.g. 235/55 R 18 100 V.

235 Tyre width in mm
55 Height/width ratio in %
R Code letter for the type of tyre - Radial
18 Diameter of wheel in inches
100 Load index
V Speed symbol

Load index

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

95 690 kg
96 710 kg
97 730 kg
98 750 kg
99 775 kg
100 800 kg
101 825 kg
102 850 kg
103 875 kg

Speed symbol

The speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned.

M 130 km/h
T 190 km/h
U 200 km/h
H 210 km/h
V 240 km/h
W 270 km/h
Y 300 km/h

⚠ WARNING

› Do not exceed the maximum permissible load bearing capacity and speed for the tyres fitted.

Tread wear indicators



Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres that display the permissible minimum tread depth.

Markings on the walls of the tyres with the letters TWI or other symbols (e.g. △) indicate the position of the wear indicators.

A tyre is to be regarded as worn out when this wear indicator is flush with the tread.

The tread depth can be measured with a tread depth gauge on the ice scraper. The ice scraper is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not use worn tyres.

Tyre manufacturing date

The date of manufacture is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

10 18 ... This means that the tyres were produced in the 10th week of the year 2021.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not use tyres that are older than 6 years.

Troubleshooting

Help with a flat tyre

› Spare and emergency spare wheel » page 227

› Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 227

› Breakdown kit » page 229.

Change of tyre pressure

illuminates

› Stop the vehicle.

› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Show tyres with modified pressure

› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition:

CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

All-season or winter tires

Usage

All-season or winter tyres improve handling in winter weather conditions. They are characterised by 'M+S' and a mountaintop and snowflake symbol .

The symbol on the tire provides information about the grip on snow.

The symbol on the tire manufacturer's sticker provides information about the adhesion on ice.

What you should be mindful of

For the best possible handling, use tyres on all four wheels with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm.

Change winter tyres to summer tyres at the appropriate time. Summer tyres have better driving and braking characteristics on snow- and ice-free roads and at temperatures above 7 °C.

Usage conditions

If all-season or winter tyres are installed that have a lower speed category than the actual specified maximum vehicle speed, then proceed as follows:

› In Infotainment, set the speed limit according to the category of tyres fitted.

› In the driver's field of view, affix a warning label with the maximum value of the speed category intended for the tyres fitted (applies only to certain countries).

Settings

The speed limit setting for tyres is set in the Infotainment in the following menu item:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Snow chains

Usage

The snow chains improve driving in wintry road conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident as well as tyre damage!

› Do not use chains on routes that are free from snow and ice.

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

› Before fitting the snow chains, remove the full wheel trims.

› Only mount the snow chains on the front wheels.

Technical data

Permitted rim/tyre combinations for mounting of snow chains:

Rim size	Tyre size
6,5Jx17 ET38	215/65 R17

Only fit snow chains with links and locks that are no larger than 13 mm.

Spare and emergency spare wheel

Overview

Spare wheel

› The dimensions of a standard spare wheel correspond to the dimensions of the wheels mounted on the vehicle.

› A temporary spare wheel is provided with a warning label on the rim. This wheel is intended to enable you to reach the nearest specialist garage.

Inflate a space saver wheel with the maximum prescribed pressure.

Emergency wheel

A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel. This wheel is intended to enable you to reach the nearest specialist garage.

An emergency wheel is significantly narrower than the wheels mounted ex-factory.

Remove the wheel on vehicles without sound system and replace

The spare wheel or emergency wheel is mounted in a recess under the floor covering or the variable loading floor in the boot.

Removing



› Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.

› Unscrew the lock nut.

› Take out the wheel.

Inserting

› Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.

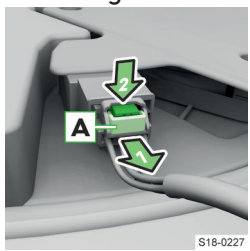
› Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.

› Screw in the locknut until it stops.

› Replace the box with the tool kit into the wheel and secure it with the tape.

Remove the wheel on vehicles with sound system and replace

Removing



› Partially pull out the safety tab **A**.

› Press the safety button and remove the plug.



› Unscrew the lock nut.

› Remove the bass loudspeaker.

› Take out the wheel.

Inserting

› Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.

› Insert the bass loudspeaker.

› Screw in the locknut until it stops.

› Insert the connector in the bass loudspeaker.

› Secure the safety tab **A**.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

What you should be mindful of

Before changing

› Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.

Block the wheel that is diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed at the front and rear using suitable tools.

› Turn off the engine.

› Let all of the occupants get out. During the wheel change they should not stand on the road, e.g. behind the crash barriers.

› Close all doors, the boot and bonnet.

› Uncouple any trailers.

Raise vehicle

⚠ WARNING

Always ensure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip!

- Provide a wide and firm base under the jack on loose surfaces.
- Create a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber floor mat) under the jack on a smooth surface.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Do not insert any body parts under the raised vehicle.
- Do not start the engine of the lifted vehicle.

⚠ NOTICE

Danger of damage to vehicle!

- Make sure that the jack is attached correctly to the bridge of the sill.

After having been changed

- Check the tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary.
- In vehicles with a tyre indicator, save the tyre pressure values in the system.
- Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts of the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

  The specified tightening torque is 140 Nm.
- Drive carefully until the tightening torque is checked.
- Replace the damaged tyre. It is not recommended to repair the tyre.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- Too low a tightening torque may cause the wheel to disengage while driving.
- Too high a tightening torque can damage the threads and cause the rim to deform.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- Do not grease or lubricate screws.
- Do not use corroded or damaged screws.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

Release screws

- If the vehicle has covers over the wheel bolts, remove them » page 232.
- If the vehicle has wheel trims, remove them » page 232.

⚠ WARNING

- If you step on the key end when loosening the screw, hold on to the vehicle for better stability.

Some vehicles may have anti-theft wheel bolts that protect the wheels from theft.



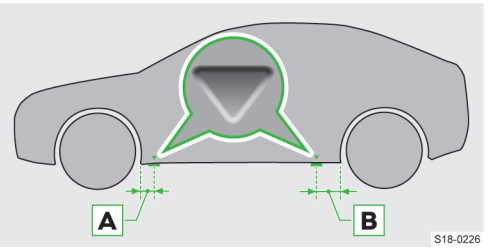
- Insert the upper section on the anti-theft wheel bolt until it stops.



- Place the key on the wheel bolt or on the attachment piece.
- Turn the screw a maximum of half a turn so that the wheel does not come loose and fall off.

Jacking points for the jack

The jacking points are located on the lower sill of the vehicle.

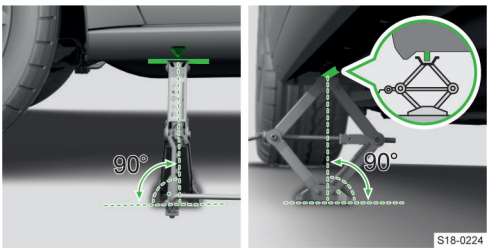


A 12 cm

B 24 cm

Position the jack and lift the vehicle

- Use the jack from the tool kit.



- Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.
- Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point.

› Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar.
› Continue to lift the vehicle until the wheel is just off the floor.

Changing a wheel

› Unscrew the screws and place them on a clean surface.
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the wheel.
› Slightly screw in the screws.
› Lower the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Applies to factory built or original accessory wheel trims from ŠKODA.

› Install the anti-theft wheel bolt according to the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

Tighten screws

› Tighten the opposite wheel bolts including the anti-theft wheel bolt one after the other.
› Reinstall the wheel bolt cover caps » page 232.

Or:

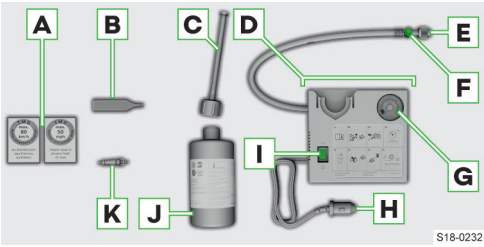
› Reinstall the full wheel covers » page 232.

ⓘ Keep the label with the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolts. A replacement upper section can be acquired from ŠKODA original parts based on this.

Breakdown kit

Content overview

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.



A Sticker with speed indication
B Valve remover
C Inflation hose with plug
D Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor)
E Tyre inflation hose
F Button for pressure reduction
G Pressure indicator
H 12 volt cable connector
I ON and OFF switch
J Tyre inflation bottle
K Replacement valve core

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Usage conditions

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit not at all intended to replace a permanent repair on the tyre.

The purpose of the repair is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Change the tyre repaired by the breakdown kit as soon as possible.

Before using the kit

› Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
› Turn off the engine.
› Let all of the occupants get out. During the wheel repair they should not stand on the road, e.g. behind the crash barriers.
› Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
› Uncouple any trailers.

After using the kit

If a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar cannot be achieved, the tyre is too damaged and cannot be sealed with the puncture set:

› Stop driving. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Once a tyre pressure of 2.0–2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

› Avoid full accelerations, strong braking and fast cornering.

Information for driving with repaired tyres

› The pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.
› If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar and less, do not continue! Seek the help of a specialist garage.
› If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, correct the pressure to the correct value of at least 2 bar and continue driving.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of damage to the compressor!

› After the maximum running time of the air compressor, allow it to cool for a few minutes.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of burns!

The tyre inflation hose and the air compressor may become hot when inflated.

› Allow the air compressor and hose to cool for a few minutes.

Usage restrictions

Do not use the kit in the following cases:

› The rim is damaged.

› The outdoor temperature is below the minimum temperature indicated in the manual of the tyre filling bottle.

› Tyre punctures are greater than 4 mm.

› There is damage to the tire sidewall.

› The expiry date stated on the tyre inflation bottle has expired.

Self-help

Seal the tyres

› Unscrew the valve cap from the damaged tyre.

› Unscrew the valve core with the valve insert and place it on a clean surface.

› Shake the tyre inflation bottle back and forth with sealant.

› Screw the inflation hose onto the tyre inflater bottle. The film on the closure is pierced automatically.

› Remove the plug from the inflation hose and push it fully onto the tyre valve.

› Hold the bottle with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent into the tyre.

› Remove the filler plug from the valve.

› Screw in the valve insert.

Inflate tyres

› Fit the tyre inflation hose of the air compressor to the tyre valve.

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.

› Start the engine.

› Plug the connector into the 12 volt socket .

› Turn on the air compressor.

› Once a tyre pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar is reached, turn off the air compressor.

Observe the maximum running time of the air compressor according to the directions of the repair kit manufacturer.

› If an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar has not been reached, remove the tyre inflation hose from the valve.

› Drive approx. 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to distribute in the tyre.

› Replace the tire inflation hose on the valve and repeat the inflation procedure.

Tyre pressure

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

› Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load.

› Check the pressure in all tyres at least once a month and before each longer ride.

› Check the pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

› After each change in tyre pressure, save the new values in the tyre control display.

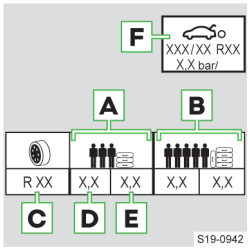
⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› If tyre pressure loss is very quick, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.

Sticker with prescribed tyre pressures

The sticker with prescribed tyre pressures is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



A Tyre pressure in case of partial load

B Tyre pressure when fully loaded

C Tyre diameter in inches

This information only serves as information for the prescribed tyre pressure.

This is not a listing of approved tyre sizes for your vehicle. These are in the vehicle's technical documentation, as well as in the declaration of conformity, in the so-called COC document.

D Tyre pressure reading for the front axle tyres

E Tyre pressure reading for the rear axle tyres

F Prescribed tyre pressure value for the emergency wheel

Tyre pressure monitor

Functionality

The tyre pressure monitoring indicator indicates a change in tyre pressure.

Warning when pressure changes

illuminates

› Stop the vehicle.

› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Show tyres with modified pressure

› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition:

CAR > 🚗

Or:

MENU > 🚘 > 🚗

Function restriction

The system is unable to provide a warning in the event of a very rapid tyre pressure loss, e.g. sudden puncture.

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

› Uneven loading of the wheels, e.g. with a trailer attached
› Sporty driving style
› Driving on dirt roads
› Snow chains fitted

Saving tyre pressure values

Store the tyre pressure values in the infotainment

› Inflate the tyres to the prescribed inflation pressure.
› Turn on the ignition.
› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the vehicle condition:

CAR > 🚗

Or:

MENU > 🚘 > 🚗

› Using the functional surfaces ◀ ▶ select the tyre control menu.
› Tap on the functional surface (!) **SET**.
› Then follow the instructions on the screen.

In which case should the tyre pressure values be saved

› Change of tyre pressure
› Change of one or more wheels
› Change of position of a wheel on the vehicle
› Always after covering a distance of 10,000 km or once a year

Troubleshooting

Functional restriction / system fault

(!) flashes for about 1 minute and stays on

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the ignition and start the engine.

If the indicator light (!) flashes again after the engine starts, there is a problem with the system.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

Functionality

The system measures tyre pressure while driving using sensors on the wheels.

For correct system function, you must select the tyre type as well as the load condition of the vehicle in the Infotainment.

ⓘ After switching on the ignition, the last measured tyre pressure values are displayed. This display will be updated at the start of the journey.

Warning when changing the tyre pressure

(!) illuminates

› Stop the vehicle.

› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Overview

Display in the instrument cluster

› Select *Vehicle* .

Display in Infotainment

› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the vehicle condition:

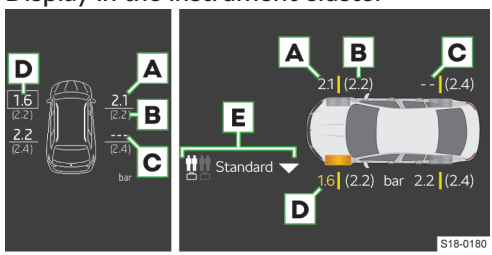
CAR > 🚗

Or:

MENU > 🚘 > 🚗

› Using the functional surfaces ◀ ▶ choose the Tyre Pressure Monitoring menu item.

Display in the instrument cluster



A Tyre pressure
B Recommended tyre pressure
C Tyre pressure not available
D Tyre pressure too low
E Adjust the vehicle's loading condition

ⓘ The tyres warm up while driving and there is an increase in pressure. This is completely normal, it is

not a defect. If the system indicates an increase in pressure while driving, do not reduce the pressure.

Settings

Tyre type

Select the tyre type in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Vehicle loading condition

› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the vehicle condition:

CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

› Using the functional surfaces choose the menu item ◀ ▶. *Tyre pressure monitor* .

› Tap the ▽ functional area and select the vehicle load condition.

Troubleshooting

Functional restriction / system fault

(!) flashes

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the ignition and start the engine.

If the indicator light (!) flashes again after the engine starts, there is a problem with the system.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Wheel bolt cover caps

Remove cover caps and install

Disconnecting



› Push the pull-off clamp onto the cover cap up to the stop.

› Remove the cover cap.

Installing

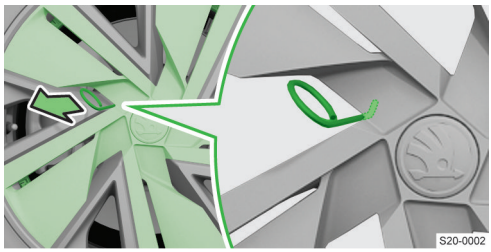
› Push the cover cap onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Full wheel frame

Removing and installing the trim

Removal

Applies to factory built or original accessory aero trims from ŠKODA.



› Hang the hook as close to the centre as possible to remove the wheel covers at the edge of the panel.

› Pull off the centre of the wheel cover by loosening it and pulling off the trim.

ⓘ For easier removal, you can put the wheel bolt wrench through the eye of the hook and pull on both ends of the wrench.

Installing

Applies to factory built or original accessory aero trims from ŠKODA.

› When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located at the location indicated on the bezel.

› Position the panel on the wheel rim and push in the individual spokes of the panel one after the other until they are fully engaged.

› Press in the centre of the wheel cover until it engages completely.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Removal

Does not apply to aero trims. Applies to other factory built or original accessory trims from ŠKODA.

› Hang the hook for removing the wheel trims at the edge of one of the openings in the trim.

› Push the wheel wrench through the hook, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

Does not apply to aero trims. Applies to other factory built or original accessory trims from ŠKODA.

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.

When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located at the location indicated on the bezel.

› Press the trim, starting at the valve, into the rim on both sides until it engages around the entire circumference.

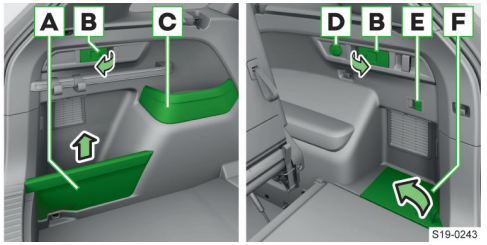
NOTICE

› Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Storage space and interior equipment

Equipment in the boot

Overview



A *Applicable to the five-seater variant of the vehicle.*
Removable partition of the storage compartment
Max. load 2.5 kg

B Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests

C Fixed storage compartment
Max. load 1.5 kg

D 12 volt socket

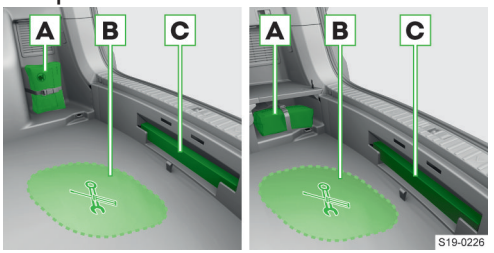
E Trailer hitch switch

F *Applicable to the seven-seater variant of the vehicle.*
Side compartment
› Pull at the loop to open.

Emergency equipment

Overview

Emergency equipment in the luggage compartment



A Positioning of the first aid kit (depending on equipment)

B Tool kit

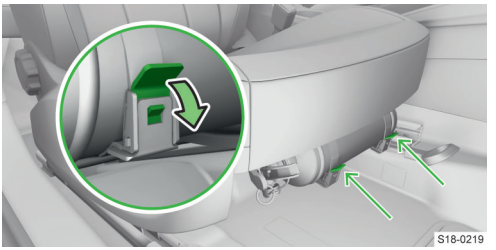
C Placing of the warning triangle

Storage compartment for the reflective vest

The storage compartment for the reflective vest is in the storage compartment of the front door.

Fire extinguisher under the passenger seat

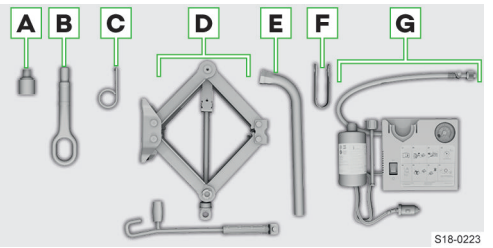
Only valid for some countries.



Tool kit

Overview

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components may be included in the tool kit.



A Attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts

B Towing lug

C Hook for removing the full wheel covers

D Jack with sign and crank

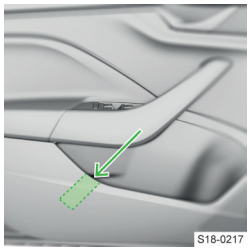
E Wheel wrench

F Removal clip for the wheel bolt cover caps

G Breakdown set

The declaration of conformity is enclosed with the jack or the logbook folder.

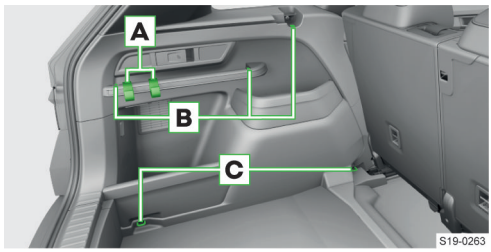
Storage compartment for the reflective vest



Fasteners in the boot

Overview

Five-seater variant of the vehicle

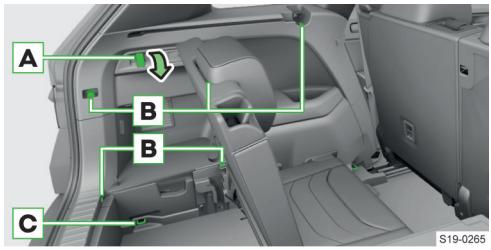


A Bag hooks
Max. load 7.5 kg

B Hook for securing the fastening nets

C Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 350 kg

Seven-seater variant of the vehicle

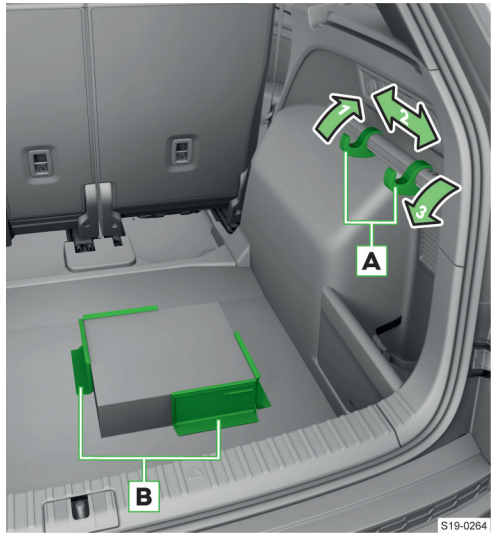


A Bag hooks
Max. load 7.5 kg

B Hook for securing the fastening nets

C Lashing eye for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 350 kg

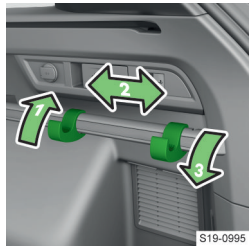
Other fasteners



A Sliding bag hooks
Max. load 7.5 kg

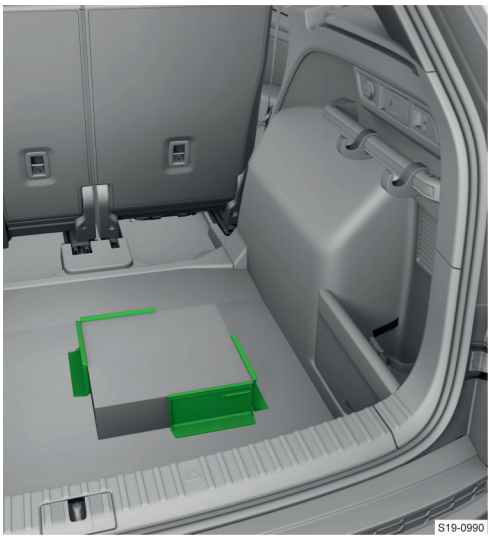
B Cargo elements
Max. load 8 kg
A storage compartment for the cargo elements is located under the floor covering in the boot.
› Fold up the Cargo element and fasten it to the floor covering in the boot.

Bag hooks in the boot



The maximum load for the hook is 7.5 kg.

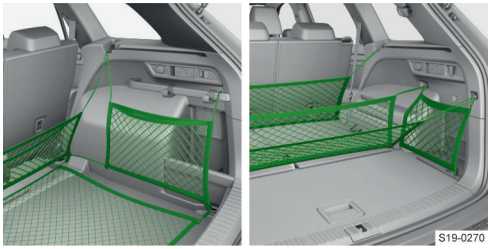
Cargo elements in the luggage compartment



The maximum load for the Cargoelements is 8 kg.

Fastening nets

Overview

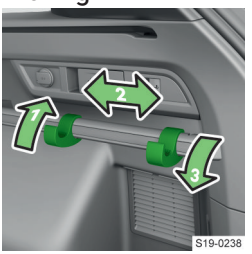


The maximum load of the respective fastening nets is 1.5 kg.

Sliding hooks

Settings

Moving



1 Loosening
2 Moving
3 Applying

Removal



› Move the hook into the front area of the fixing strip and remove it.

Inserting hook



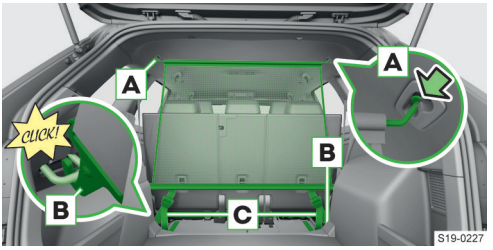
› Press the hook against the front part of the fixing strip and fold it down to the stop.

The maximum load for the hook is 7.5 kg.

Net partition

Attach the net partition

Attach at the back



› Before installing the net partition behind the second row of seats, fold forward the third row of seats.
› Insert the crossbar into the mount A on one side and push it forwards.
› Fix the bar in the same way on the other side.
› Snap the carabiners B into the lashing eyes.
› Pull the straps firmly at the free ends C.

Fasten in the front

The procedure is analogous to the process behind.

The lashing eyes for the carabiner are located under the central body pillars.

Loosening

Loosening takes place in the reverse order to fixing.

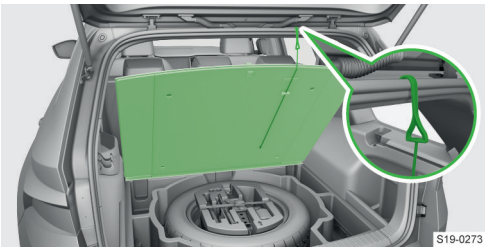
Double-sided floor covering

Overview

The vehicle may be equipped with a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable.

Floor covering in the boot

Folding up and folding down



NOTICE

Before closing the boot lid, remove the hook from the frame.

Roll-up luggage compartment cover

Operation

Extending



› Pull out the cover on the handle until it clicks into place.

Retracting



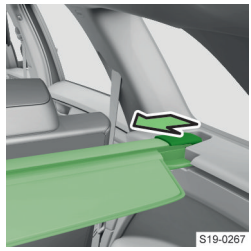
› Press the cover in the handle area.

The cover rolls up.

It is possible that the cover rolls more slowly during winter weather conditions.

Removing and inserting

Take out and insert the roll-up cover



› Press the end of the crossbar and take out or insert the cover.

Stowing the cover under the variable loading floor

Applicable to the seven-seater variant of the vehicle.



› Open the side pockets.



› Insert the cover into the recesses of the side panel.
› Close the side pockets.
› Restore the original position of the variable loading floor.

Variable loading floor in the boot

Setting the position

The maximum load of the rear plate in the upper position is 25 kg. The maximum load of both plates in the upper position is 75 kg in total.

Five-seater version of the vehicle – the variable loading floor consists of two parts.

Seven-seater verison of the vehicle – the variable loading floor consists of one part.

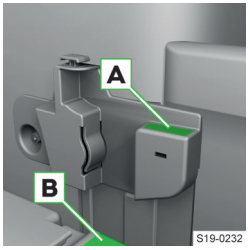
ⓘ In vehicles with an emergency wheel or vehicle battery under the floor covering in the luggage compartment, the variable loading floor cannot be adjusted to the lower position.
For vehicles with an emergency wheel under the floor covering in the luggage compartment, the maximum load on the floor covering is 5 kg.

Set the variable loading floor to the upper or lower position

The front and rear plates of the variable load floor can be adjusted to the upper or lower position. The handling of the two panels is identical.



› Lift the variable load floor and pull it towards you.

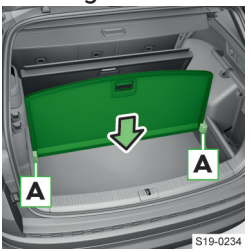


› To set in the upper position, position the variable loading floor in the front area on area A.
› To set in the lower position, position the variable loading floor in the front area in space B.



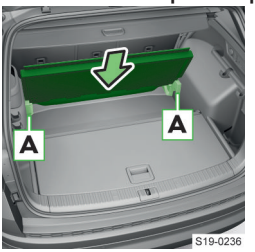
› Press the variable loading floor forward and hang up.

Dividing the boot



› Lift the rear plate of the variable loading floor.
› Push the plate into the grooves A.

Fold the front plate up and back

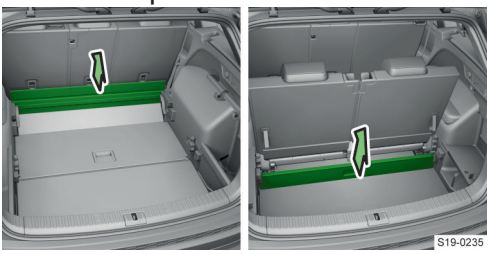


› Lift the plate. The plate is inserted into the grooves A.
› Folding it back takes place in reverse order.

Partition in the boot

Removing and inserting

Remove the partition



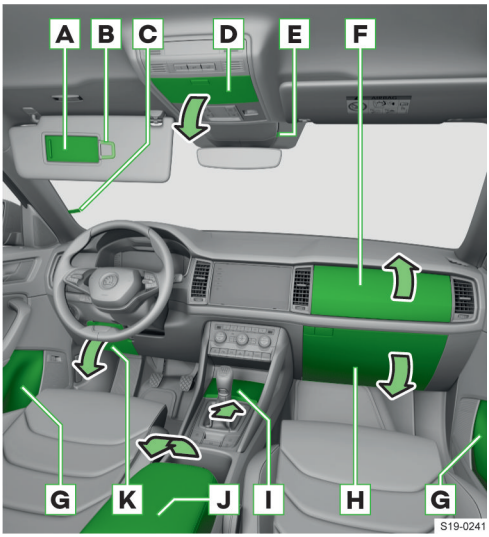
Vehicle version: Five-seater/seven-seater

The partition prevents the cargo from slipping.

› Remove the partition upwards.

Interior equipment front

Overview



A Make up mirror

B Ticket holder

C Car park ticket holder

D Glasses compartment
Max. load 0.25 kg
› To open, press the button.

E USB-connection
The USB connection is for charging only.

F Upper storage compartment
Max. load 1.5 kg
› To open, press the left button on the lid of the lower storage compartment.

G Storage tray
› Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
› Storage compartment for the waste container
› Storage compartment for the reflective vest

H Storage compartment below with air outlet nozzle
In the compartment, there is a card holder, a pen holder and a storage compartment for coins.
Max. load 3 kg
› To open, press the right button.
› Turn the knob to position ☼ to open the air outlet nozzle.

I Storage tray
In the compartment is a 12-volt power outlet and a USB connection.
The USB connections can be used for charging and for data transfer.
› Pull the strip to open the compartment.

J Openable and adjustable armrest with storage compartment
› To open the compartment, lift the armrest.

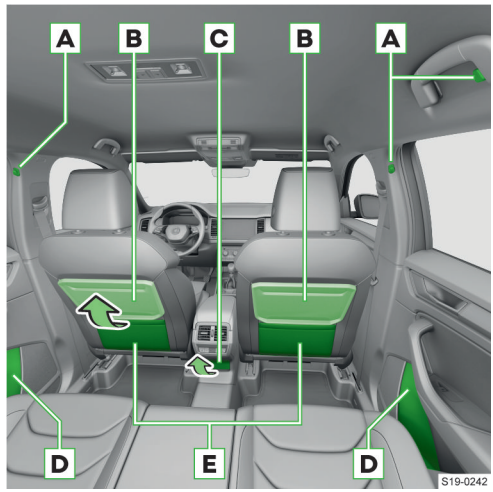
K Storage tray
Max. load 0.5 kg
A card holder is located in the compartment.
› Pull on the handle to open.

NOTICE

› Do not leave any heat-sensitive objects in the spectacle compartment D

Interior equipment rear

Overview



A Coat hook
Max. load 2 kg

B Folding table

C Depending upon vehicle equipment:
› 12 volt socket
› 230 volt socket

D Storage tray
› Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
› Storage compartment for the reflective vest

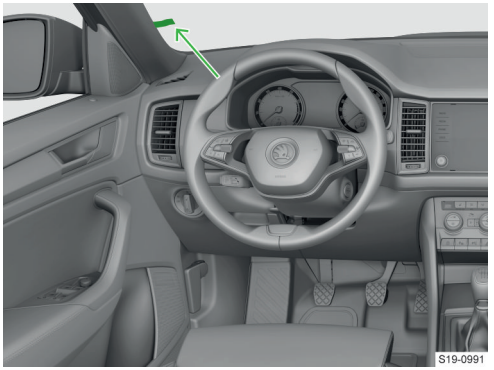
E Storage pocket

⚠ WARNING

› Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.

› Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

Car park ticket holder



Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door



The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 1.5 l.

Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door



The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 1.5 l.

USB-connections



The USB connection is for charging only.

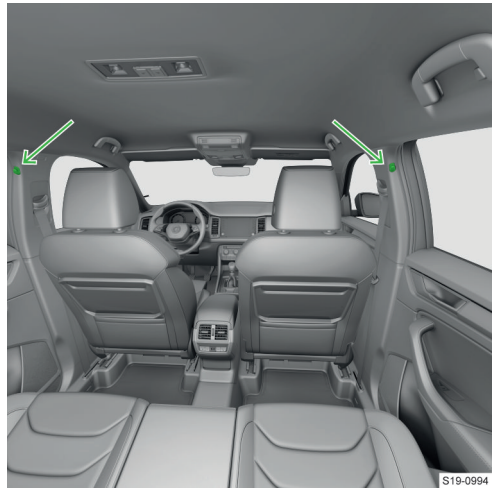


The USB connections can be used for charging and for data transfer.



The USB connections are for charging only.

Hook on the centre body pillar



The maximum load for the hook is 2 kg.

⚠ WARNING

› Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.

› Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

Glasses compartment



The maximum load for the compartment is 0.25 kg.

NOTICE

› Do not leave heat-sensitive objects behind in the glasses compartment.

Pen holder



Storage compartment for card and coins



Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side



Third row of seats – drinks and telephone holder



CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

› Never put hot beverage containers in the drinks holder.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Storage compartment under the front seat

Opening the storage compartment



The maximum load for the compartment is 1.5 kg.

Storage compartment for an umbrella

Overview



NOTICE

Risk of damage to the bodywork and the interior trim of the vehicle!

- In the storage compartment, only insert the umbrella from the ŠKODA original accessories.
- Always push the umbrella into the storage compartment as far as it will go.

Phonebox

What you should be mindful of

CAUTION

Risk of burns during charging!

- The phone may get warm, remove it carefully from the storage compartment.
- Do not leave any metal objects in the compartment under the phone. If there is a metallic object in the storage compartment, which has become hot, remove the phone and let it cool down in the storage compartment!

Functionality

Phonebox function

- Wireless charging of phones.
- Amplification of the telephone signal (only valid for some countries).

The Phonebox is located in the storage compartment in the centre console at the front.

Insert a phone with max. dimensions of 164.5x83 mm into the storage compartment.

Charging Indicator

The charge status is indicated by text on the Infotainment screen.

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

When the phone is charging, the in the status bar in the infotainment screen will light up.

Recommendations for optimal function

- The phone is positioned with the screen facing up.
- Insert the phone without the protective case.
- Position the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad.

Operating conditions

Conditions for wireless charging

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The phone supports the Qi standard.
- ✓ There is no object between the pad and the phone.

Troubleshooting

A message has been displayed on the Infotainment screen indicating that the mobile phone cannot be charged.

- Check that there is no object between the support and the phone to be charged. If this is the case, remove the phone and the item. Place the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad again.
- Check that the position of the phone to be charged has not changed. If this is the case, remove the phone and put it back in the centre of the phone symbol on the pad.

Cup holder

Overview

Cup holder at the front



A bottle can be opened with one hand in the holder.

- Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

Rear cup holder

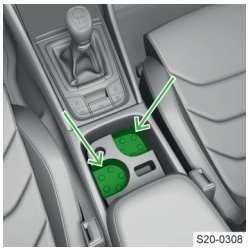





⚠ CAUTION
Risk of scalding!
› Never put hot beverage containers in the drinks holder.

ⓘ NOTICE
Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

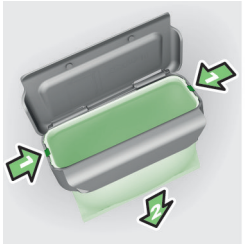
Cup holder Easy Open



A bottle can be opened with one hand in the holder.

Waste container

Replace bags




Ashtray and cigarette lighter

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION
Risk of burning or fire!
› Do not use the ashtray for storing hot or burning objects.
› Handle the lighter carefully.

Operation

The ashtray is inserted in the cup holder.

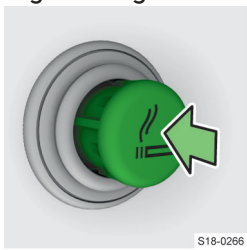
Open the ashtray



Remove the lid



Cigarette lighter



› Push in the lighter.
› Wait until the glowing lighter pops back out.
› Remove the lighter and use.
› Push the lighter back in.

The socket of the cigarette lighter serves as a 12-Volt socket.

Folding table

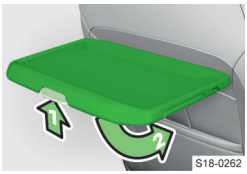
Operation

Fold up the table



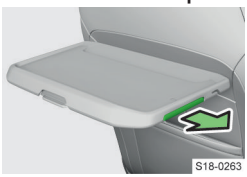
› Press the safety button and fold the table up to the desired position.

Unfold the table



› Press the safety button and unfold the table.

Slide out the cup holder



The maximum load for the table is 8.5 kg.

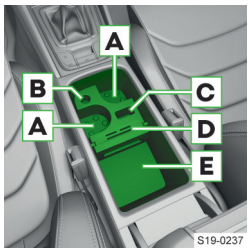
⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› While driving, the table must be in the folded-down position.

Multifunction holder

Overview



- **A** Cup holder
- **B** Storage compartment for storing the cover of the 12-volt power outlet
- **C** Storage compartment for the vehicle key
- **D** Storage compartment for coins and card
- **E** Storage tray

The multifunction holder can be removed or rotated.

Ceiling

Removing and inserting

The blanket is in a bag that can be attached to one of the following locations:

› On the guide rods of the front headrests

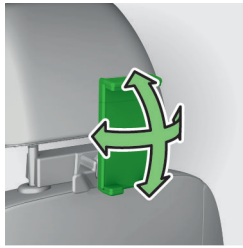
› In the storage pockets on the backs of the front seats

› On the operating lever for adjusting the second seat row in the longitudinal direction

Tablet holder

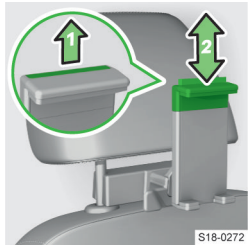
Settings

Tilt and turn





Adjust size

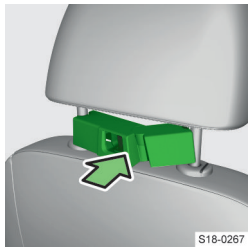


› Pull out the locking tab and move the upper part of the holder to the desired position.

Set the minimum size of the empty holder to avoid noise while driving.

Removal and Insertion

Fasten behind the headrests

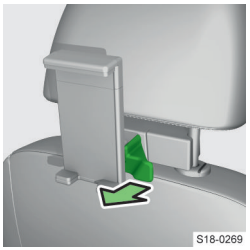


› Place the open adapter on the front guide rods of the headrest and clip in carefully.

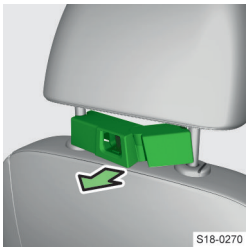


› Clip in the holder in the adapter.

Removal



› Press the safety button and unfold the holder.



› Press on the adapter and remove it.

Technical data

The holder is for fixing a tablet with a height of min. 11.5 cm and max. 19.5 cm.

The maximum load for the holder is 0.75 kg.

12-Volt power socket

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle!

› Use the socket only for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a power consumption of up to 120 watts.

› When using two or more sockets at the same time, the total power consumption of the connected electrical accessories must not exceed 190 W.

⚠ NOTICE

Danger of damage to the connected consumers!

› Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

230-Volt power socket

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

Danger of damage to the connected consumers!

› Do not connect a light with fluorescent lamp to the socket.

› Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

Functionality

Status display

› Lights up in green - the socket is switched on.

› Green light flashes - the socket is still switched on for about 10 minutes after the engine has been switched off, if a consumer was connected before the engine was switched off.

ⓘ The socket has a child safety lock. When inserting the plug, the fuse is unlocked and the socket is switched on.

Operating conditions

✓ Running engine

ⓘ On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the socket also works in STOP mode.

Troubleshooting

The indicator light flashes red

The socket is turned off e.g. for the following reasons:

› Excessive current

› Low state of charge of the 12-volt vehicle battery

› Overheating of the socket

› If the reasons given above no longer exist and the socket is not switched on automatically, disconnect the connected load from the socket and reconnect after a short time.

230 volt socket and USB connections



The USB connections are for charging only.

Storage compartment with air outlet nozzle

Overview

In the compartment, there is a card holder and a pen holder.

The maximum load for the compartment is 3 kg.

› Turn the knob in the compartment to position ☼ to open the air outlet nozzle.

Roof rack and hitch

Roof rack

Technical data

The maximum weight of the load incl. roof rack is 75 kg.

1 The roof cross beams are attached to the roof rail.

› We recommend using roof bars from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Swivelling hitch

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not manipulate the switch for swinging the tow bar in and out while a trailer or another accessory is coupled to the tow bar. The tow bar could be unlocked.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

› Handle the trailer coupling carefully.

› When swinging out the tow bar, do not stand in the middle area of the rear bumper.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the trailer coupling!

› When not using the towing device, swing the tow bar under the bumper.

Tow bar: swivel out/in

Swing out the tow bar



› Pull on the switch. The tow bar swings out. The indicator light ⊸ inside the switch illuminates.



› Press the tow bar until it audibly clicks into place.

Check latchings: the indicator light ⊸ within the switch lights up.

Swivel tow bar

ⓘ NOTICE

› No trailer or any other accessory can be connected to the tow bar.

› A socket or adapter may not be plugged into the socket.



› Pull on the switch. The tow bar is unlocked. The indicator light ⊸ inside the switch illuminates.



› Swing in the tow bar under the bumper until it audibly clicks into place.

Check latchings: the indicator light ⊸ within the switch lights up.

Coupling or uncoupling a trailer or accessory

The following information describes the procedure for coupling and uncoupling a trailer. The information also refers to another accessory, e.g. a bike carrier.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not use the safety eye for towing.

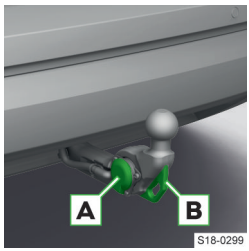
› Distribute and fix the load correctly.

ⓘ The trailer has a 13-pin electrical socket. If the trailer has a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding adapter from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Coupling

› Swing out the tow bar.

› Put the trailer drawbar onto the ball head.



› Plug the electrical trailer plug into the socket A.

› Hook the tear-off rope of the trailer onto the safety eye B. The tear-off rope must sag against the vehicle in all trailer positions.

Uncoupling

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Power supply of the trailer power network

In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer, the trailer is powered by the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle electronics!
The total power consumption of all consumers connected to the trailer power supply must not exceed 350 watts.

Troubleshooting

Trailer coupling error

The indicator light ⊸ inside the switch does not light up or flash, or the tow bar does not lock into place.

› Do not use the trailer coupling.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

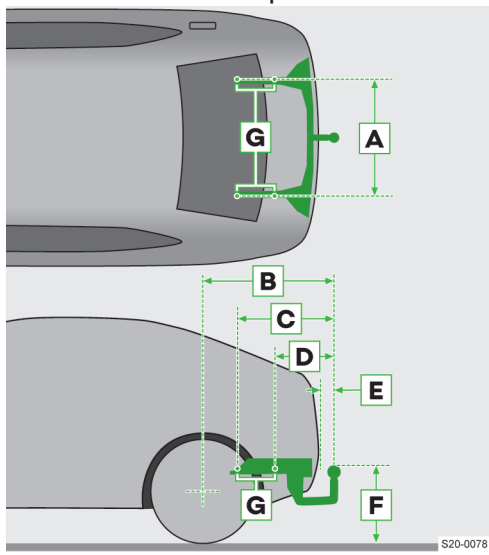
Tow bar not locked

illuminates

› Engage the tow bar.

Technical data

Tow hitch attachment points



A Distance of the attachment points

B Length of the rear overhang to the centre of the ball head

C Distance of the front attachment point to the centre of the ball head

D Distance of the rear attachment point to the centre of the ball head

E Distance of the rear bumper to the centre of the ball head (according to the ECE-55 standard)

F Distance from the centre of the ball head to the road (according to the ECE-55 standard)

G Fastening points on the body

In mm	
A	1047.1
B	1084
C	591.2
D	343.9
E	min. 65
F	350-420

Maximum vertical load for trailer operation

The maximum nose weight when towing a trailer is 100 kg.

The valid specification for your vehicle can be found in the technical vehicle documentation, e.g. vehicle ap-

proval documentation, the COC document, or at a ŠKODA partner.

Other information, e.g. on the nameplate of the trailer device, merely provides information on the test values of the device.

Support load with mounted accessories

When using the accessories, e.g. bicycle carrier, the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The maximum length of the mounted accessories from the ball of the towing device may not exceed 70 cm.

The permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including its load corresponds to the maximum vertical load for trailer operation; the value can be found in the vehicle registration documentation.

If the maximum load in trailer operation is more than 75 kg, then the permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including their load must not exceed 75 kg.

This value applies if the centre of gravity is at a distance of no more than 30 cm from the towing device ball head.

If the distance of the centre gravity of the load to the ball head of the towing device is greater than 30 cm, then the max. permissible total weight of the accessory, including its load, decreases, e.g. at a distance of 60 cm from the ball head, the permissible weight decreases by half.

If the distance between the centre of gravity of the load and the ball head of the towing hitch is 70 cm, the permissible total weight of the accessories including their load is reduced to 0 kg.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Do not exceed the maximum vertical load.

› The permissible trailer load and the weight of another accessory, e.g. of the bike carrier, is not to be exceeded.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the trailer and the vehicle itself!

› When using the accessory (e.g. bicycle carrier), observe the maximum length and the permissible total weight of the accessory incl.

Maintaining and cleaning

Service events

service intervals

Compliance with service intervals is crucial for the life and value of the vehicle.

You will be notified of the due date for service with the symbol and the corresponding message on the display of the instrument cluster.

The specialist garage will inform you of the type of service interval, the option of changing this and the scope of service.

All services and the replacement or refilling of operating fluids are chargeable to the customer, even during the warranty period, unless the ŠKODA AUTO warranty conditions or other binding agreements determine otherwise.

Proof of service

A specialist garage stores the proof of service in the information system called Digital Service Plan.

The proof of service can be printed out.

Displaying the service due date in the Infotainment system

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR > > Menu item for the Service

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for the Service

Resetting information

We recommend that you do not reset the information regarding service events on your own. It can lead to incorrect setting of the service intervals and thus also to possible faults in the vehicle.

For vehicles with a variable service interval, new service interval values calculated according to the previous operating conditions will be displayed after the oil change service indicator is reset. These values will then continue to be adjusted according to the current operating conditions.

Service work, adjustments and technical changes

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to the vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We advise only using ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.

ŠKODA Service partner

All ŠKODA service partners work according to the instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO. Service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We therefore advise having all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to the vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA original parts

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts comply wholly with ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA original accessories

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. With these accessories, ŠKODA AUTO stands for safety, reliability and the suitability for your vehicle type.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the

materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements.

Spoiler

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- Only use the original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the original spoiler on the boot lid.
- The original spoiler on the front bumper cannot be left on its own without the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

Cylinder block heater (blockheater)

⚠ NOTICE

A retrofitted cylinder block heater (blockheater) can lead to corrosion of the engine in 2.0 l diesel engines.

- Do not install the cylinder block heater in diesel engines.

Component protection

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection. This component protection ensures the functional limitation of these components in a non-legitimate installation in another vehicle (e.g. after a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Interior

What you should be mindful of

⚠ NOTICE

- Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.

Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® / Suedia / material

⚠ NOTICE

- Remove impurities as soon as possible.
- Do not use solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® and Suedia suede seat upholstery.
- Make sure that natural leather is not moistened when cleaning and that no water seeps into the seams.
- Do not clean the roof cladding with a brush.

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of fading to the cover fabric!

- If necessary, do not leave the covers for long periods in the blazing sun.

ⓘ

- During use, the leather and Alcantara®- and Suedia and materials may show minor changes (e.g. folds or discolouration). This does not constitute a material defect.
- Some clothing fabrics, e.g. dark denim, sometimes do not have sufficient colour fastness. As a result, discolouration that is clearly visible on the seat upholstery can occur. This is not a defect in the fabric.
- Sharp-edged zippers, rivets, clamps and similar garments can damage the upholstery in the vehicle. Such damages cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.

Plastic parts

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damaging the dash panel!

- Do not attach fragrances and air fresheners to the dash panel.

Windows

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the filaments or the glass antenna!

- Do not stick stickers on the heating filaments.
- Do not use sharp objects (such as pot scrapers, etc.) to clean the windows.

Covers on electrically heated seats

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damaging the heating system!

- Do not clean the seats with water or other liquids.
- Do not dry the seats by switching on the heating.

Seat belts

⚠ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seat belts!

- Do not dry clean the seat belts.
- Allow cleaned belts to dry before rolling up.

Instructions for cleaning

Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® / Suedia / material

- Remove dust and dirt on the surface with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove fresh impurities with water, slightly moistened cotton cloth or woollen cloth; if necessary, use a mild soap solution [1] and wipe with a dry cloth.

[1] A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

› Remove stubborn stains with a suitable cleaning agent.
› For regular care of natural leather, use the equipment provided for this purpose. After each clean, use a care cream with light protection and impregnation effect.
› When looking after Alcantara®-, Suedia and and fabric surfaces, remove stubborn hair with a cleaning brush. Remove pills from materials with a brush.

Plastic parts

› Remove impurities with water, slightly moistened cloth or sponge with a suitable cleaning agent if necessary.

Windows

› Remove impurities with clean water and dry with a cloth provided for this purpose.

Infotainment screen

› Remove any impurities on the screen using the cleaning agents provided.

⚠ NOTICE

Danger of screen damage!
› When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

Covers on electrically heated seats

› Remove impurities with a suitable cleaning agent.

Seat belts

› Remove impurities with a soft cloth and mild soap solution.[1)]

Exterior

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!
After washing the vehicle, the functionality of the brake system may be affected by moisture and, in winter, by ice.
› Clean and dry the brakes by repeatedly applying them at higher speeds.

⚠ NOTICE

› Bird droppings, insect residues, litter and sea salt residues, overflowed fuel,AdBlue® etc. are to be removed as soon as possible.
› Do not use rough sponges, scourers or similar to remove dirt.
› Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
› Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.
› Do not polish the vehicle in a dusty environment.

⚠ NOTICE

AdBlue® picks up some materials, e.g. paint and plastics.
› Clean the affected area with a damp cloth and cold water.
› Remove any dried solution with warm water and a sponge.

⚠ NOTICE

› Paint damage should be repaired as soon as possible.
› Do not treat painted parts with or hard waxes.
› Do not polish panels.
› We recommend treating door seals and window guides with the appropriate materials from ŠKODA original accessories. These ensure that the protective lacquer layer of the seals and window guides is not attacked.
› Do not use abrasive cleaners to clean the reversing camera.

Before driving through a car wash

› Observe the usual specifications of the car wash, e.g. close all windows, fold the mirrors, etc.
› Move the windscreen wiper lever to position **OFF** to adjust.
› If there are special attachments on your vehicle, observe the instructions of the car wash operator.

⚠ NOTICE

› Deactivate the Auto Hold function if it is necessary to roll the vehicle when passing through a car wash.

⚠ NOTICE

In vehicles with an electric luggage compartment lid, this can open automatically due to the pressure of the washing brushes.
› Lock the vehicle, e.g. with the central lock button.

After washing with a wax preservation

› Wipe off the windscreen wiper blades with a dry cloth.

Wash with a pressure washer

⚠ NOTICE

› Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure cleaner, in particular the instructions relating to the pressure and the spray distance to the vehicle surface.
› Do not direct the water jet directly at the following vehicle parts:
  › Films
  › Lock cylinder

---

1) A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

› Columns on the vehicle
› Trailer connection
› Swivelling ball bar
› Camera lenses and sensors
› Plastic, chromed and anodised parts

Remove snow and ice

⚠ NOTICE

› Remove snow and ice with a plastic scraper or a suitable deicing agent.
› Clean the cameras with a hand brush.
› Only move the scraper in one direction.
› Do not use scratchers or other sharp objects for foils.
› Do not remove snow and ice with hot or warm water.
› Do not remove snow and ice from surfaces with coarse dirt.

Instructions for cleaning

Handwash

› Wash the vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or wash glove and plenty of water, if necessary with additional suitable cleaning agents.
› Use a mild soap solution for foils and headlights [1].
› Use a glass cleaner for the windscreen wiper blades.
› Wash the cameras with clean water and dry with a suitable clean wipe.

⚠ NOTICE

› Wash out the sponge or wash mitt regularly.
› Use a different sponge for wheels, sills and the lower part of the vehicle than that used for the other vehicle parts.
› Do not wash the vehicle in the blazing sun.
› Do not dry the headlights or use sharp objects.
› Do not put pressure on the bodywork when washing.
› The temperature of the washing water may be a max. 60 °C.

After hand washing

› Rinse the vehicle and wipe it with a suitable clean cloth.

Vehicle paint

› Preserve the varnish at least twice a year with hard wax.
› Use a polish for matt lacquers.

Films

Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal: this is not an error.

The following factors have a negative effect on the life or colour fastness of the films:

› Sun rays
› moisture
› Air pollution
› Stones, e.g. due to the rebound of the cargo during transport on the roof rack

Protection of hollow spaces

Corrosion-prone cavities of the vehicle are permanently protected by preservative wax at the factory.

› Remove spilled wax with a plastic scraper, clean stains with mineral spirits.

Underseal

The underside is permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

› Have the protective coating checked by a specialist garage before starting and at the end of the cold season.

Wheels

› After washing, preserve the wheels with suitable means.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

› Severe dirt on the wheels can result in the wheels unbalancing.

Car jack

› If necessary, treat moving parts with suitable grease.

Tow hitch

› Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Ice scraper

On the fuel filler flap



[1] A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

Technical data and specifications

Requirements for the technical data

The emission standard, information on fuel consumption and other information pertaining to your vehicle can be found listed in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COC Document).

The information listed was determined in accordance with rules and under conditions that are stipulated by legal or technical regulations.

This and other information about your vehicle and the declaration of conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner.

The details in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual. These specifications and values apply to your vehicle in its condition and configuration at the time of delivery from the manufacturer. Retrofitting an accessory can have a negative impact on this information and values, in particular the values regarding fuel consumption and carbon dioxide (CO_2), which are specified in the vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity.

The performance values listed were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The vehicle is equipped with equipment in accordance with the requirements of the applicable EU-Regulations with the CE label (Conformité Européenne) are provided. For the UK market (England, Wales and Scotland) this marking corresponds to UKCA label (UK conformity assessed)unless otherwise stipulated by law.

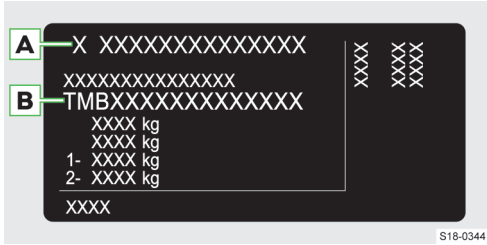


Vehicle identification data

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is found at the following locations:

- Directly in the engine compartment on the suspension turret
- On a plate under the windscreen in the lower left corner
- On the type plate at the bottom of the middle body pillar of the vehicle



Type plate

A Vehicle manufacturers

B Vehicle identification number (VIN)

Display VIN

The display of the VIN takes place in the infotainment in the following menu item:

CAR > > Menu item for the Service

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for the Service

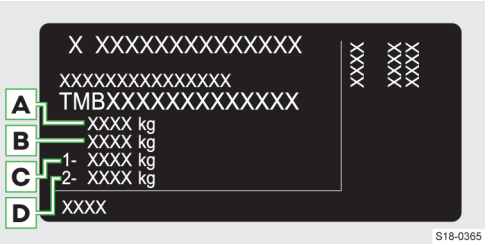
Engine number

The engine number is embossed on the engine block.

Maximum permissible weights

The maximum permissible weights are listed on the nameplate.

The type plate is located at the bottom of the right middle body pillar of the vehicle.



A Maximum permissible gross weight

B Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)

C Maximum permissible front axle load

D Maximum permissible rear axle load

Maximum permissible towed weight

The specified value is valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as the height increases, as does the ability to climb.

Therefore, for every additional 1,000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10 %.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

Payloads

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following components:

- The weight of the passenger
- The weight of all luggage and other loads
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight
- Trailer bearing load for trailer towing » *page 249*

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident and danger of vehicle damage!

- Do not exceed the specified values for the maximum permissible weights.

Operating weight

Information about the operating weight

The specification corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment. This includes 75 kg driver's weight, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tool kit and a fuel tank filled to min. 90%.

Operating weight

Engine type	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)	
		Five-seat version	Seven-seat version
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1555	1594
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	DSG [a]	1558/1588 [b]	1605/1628 [b]
	DSG [a] 4x4	1656	1696
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1569	1615
	DSG [a]	1593	1639
2.0 l/132 kW TSI	DSG [a] 4x4	1702/1733 [b]	1748/1773 [b]
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	DSG [a] 4x4	1720	1762
2.0 l/180 kW TSI	DSG [a] 4x4	1794	1826
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	DSG [a]	1701	1751
	DSG [a] 4x4	1785/1716 [c]/1747 [b]	1829/1762 [c]/1787 [b]
2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR	DSG [a] 4x4	1765	1807

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

[b] Applies to vehicles destined for the Russian market.

Engine type	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)	
		Five-seat version	Seven-seat version
[c] Applies to cars with the EU4 emission standard.			

ⓘ Ask about the exact vehicle weight in a specialist garage.

Vehicle dimensions

Dimensions

Specification	Value (in mm)	
	Five-seat version	Seven-seat version
Vehicle height	1661/1666 [a]	1660/1665 [a]
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors	1882	
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors	2087	
Ground clearance of the vehicle	193/192 [b]/195 [a]	193/192 [b]/194 [a]
Vehicle length	4697/4699 [a]	

[a] Applies to vehicles with a 2.0 l/180 kW TDI engine.

[b] Applies to Kodiaq 4x4.

Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)

The vehicle is equipped with an accident data recorder, hereinafter called as “EDR”. The purpose of the EDR lies in the data recording during a traffic accident or another extraordinary traffic situation, hereinafter called as “accident”.

Data is only recorded in the event of an accident in which the restraint systems are triggered.

The EDR records the accident in a short time (approximately 10 s), by showing the following information, for example:

- The function of certain systems in the vehicle.
- The seat belt status of the driver and front passenger.
- The actuation of the brake and accelerator pedals.
- The speed of the vehicle at the time of the accident.

The recorded data support the analysis of how the vehicle systems behaved shortly before, during and after the accident. This enables them to clarify the circumstances of the accident.

The data relating to assist systems in the vehicle is also recorded. Whether for instance the affected systems were switched on or off at the corresponding time, whether they were only partially available or were inactive. There is also the possibility of tracking whether these vehicle functions controlled, accelerated or decelerated the vehicle during the accident. Depending on the equipment, these functions are, e.g:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Lane Assist (Lane Assist)
- Park steering assistant
- Emergency braking function (Front Assist)

Under normal driving conditions, data is not recorded. There is no audio or video recording from the vehicle interior or surroundings. Personal data such as name, gender, age or place where the accident occurred is not stored in the EDR. However, third parties such as law enforcement authorities may use certain resources to connect EDR content to other data sources, and therefore deduce the identification of some of the people involved in the accident when investigating the causes of the accident.

For reading the EDR-Data, special equipment is required and the ignition switched on.

ŠKODA AUTO will not read or otherwise process any accident data from the EDR without the approval of the vehicle owner or other person authorised for use of the vehicle. Exceptions are specified in the con-

tractual arrangements, or these are subject to generally binding regulations.

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions in the area of personal data protection.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data is displayed using the following link or by reading the QR code:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

Information about the radio systems in the vehicle

Your vehicle has various radio systems.

Applicable for EU as well as countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines : The manufacturers of the radio systems declare that the systems comply with the requirements of **Directive 2014/53/EU**.

Applicable in Ukraine : Manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that this equipment complies with the requirements of the **Technical Regulation on Radio Equipment, approved by the Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine dated 25 May 2017 no. 355**.

Radio equipment regulations 2017

Applies to the UK

This vehicle has various radio systems. For the UK market, the following company is in charge of importing these radio systems in accordance with the Radio Equipment Regulation 2017:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.

Yeomans Drive, Blakelands

Milton Keynes, MK 14 5AN

United Kingdom

RADIO EQUIPMENT CONTROL (2014/53/AB)

Applicable in Turkey

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with the directive (2014/53/AB), the following company is the authorized importer [1)]for Turkey:

Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar

E5 Karayolu Fil Yokusu no:16

Cevizli Maltepe

Istanbul

Turkey

Radio Equipment Control (2014/53/EU)

Applies to Moldova

Your vehicle has various radio systems. In accordance with the directive (2014/53/EU), the following company is the authorized importer for Moldova:

DAAC Auto SRL

Importator oficial ŠKODA

Str. Calea Orheiului 111/6

MD-2020, mun. Chișinău

---

1) This information applies only to products sold by our official representative, the company – Yüce Auto Motorlu Araclar.

› The display of information about the **directive 2014/53/EU**, to harmonize legal regulations of the member states with regard to the marketing of radio systems as well as the
› Information on **Technical regulation on radio equipment approved by the resolution of the cabinet of ministers of Ukraine dated May 25, 2017 No. 355**, as well as the
› **Declaration of Conformity** (Declaration of Conformity) by the manufacturer of the radio equipment

Carried out by using the following reference or by scanning the QR code:

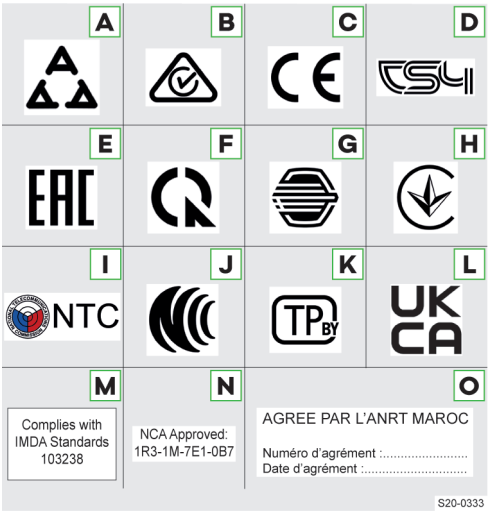
https://www.skoda-auto.com/services/red-doc

After this, proceed as follows:

1. Select the desired region.
2. Select the desired vehicle model.

Examples of labelling of radio systems

Due to the small size of some radio equipment, here are examples to identify radio equipment.



A Serbia
B Australia and New Zealand
C Europe (countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines)
D Armenia
E Russia (countries under the Russian Customs Union)
F Vietnam
G Mongolia
H Ukraine
I Philippines
J Taiwan
K Belarus
L Great Britain
M Singapore
N Ghana
O Morocco

Radiated frequency ranges, transmission outputs

Depending on the equipment, some of the systems listed in the vehicle and on the respective market may not be available.

Device	Frequency range	Maximum transmission output
Central locking system remote keyless entry	433.05–434.79 MHz	10 mW
Central control unit	434.42 MHz	–
Remote control of the auxiliary heater	868.2-868.4 MHz 868.7-869.2 MHz	25 mW 24 mW
Heating in the vehicle	868.2-868.4 MHz 868.7-869.2 MHz	25 mW 24 mW
Keyless vehicle unlocking	434.42 MHz 125 kHz	32 µW 40 dBµA/m

Device	Frequency range	Maximum transmission output
WLAN – Hotspot	2412-2472 MHz 2400-2483.5 MHz 2402-2442 MHz 2408-2480 MHz 5180-5825 MHz 5190-5795 MHz	14 dBm 10 dBm 20 dBm 4.1 dBm 11 dBm 9 dBm
Infotainment system	MW (AM): 531-1602 kHz FM: 87.5-108 MHz DAB: (BAND III): 174,928-239.2 MHz Bluetooth: 2400-2483.5 MHz	– – – 10 dBm
Wireless mobile phone charging	111 kHz	42 dBµA/m
Radar sensors for assistance systems	76-77 GHz 24,050-24.25 GHz	23.38 dBm <20 dBm
Instrument cluster with built-in immobiliser	AM: 125+/-10 kHz	1,108 W
Antennas and impedance converters	AM: 0.52-1.7 MHz FM: 87-108 MHz DAB: 174-240 MHz GNSS: 1559.052-1605.375 MHz	– – – –
Signal amplifier for mobile communication (LTE-MBC-EU)	GSM900 (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925–960 MHz) GSM1800 (uplink: 1710-1785 MHz / downlink: 1805-1880 MHz) WCDMA FDDI (uplink: 1920-1980 MHz / downlink: 2110-2170 MHz) WCDMA FDDIII (uplink: 1710-1785 MHz / downlink: 1805-1880 MHz) WCDMA FDDVIII (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925–960 MHz) LTE FDD1 (uplink: 1920-1980 MHz / downlink: 2110-2170 MHz) LTE FDD3 (uplink: 1710-1785 MHz / downlink: 1805-1880 MHz) LTE FDD7 (uplink: 2500-2570 MHz / downlink: 2620-2690 MHz) LTE FDD8 (uplink: 880–915 MHz / downlink: 925–960 MHz) LTE FDD20 (uplink: 832-862 MHz / downlink: 791-821 MHz)	GSM900: 33 dBm/2 W GSM1800: 30 dBm/1 W UMTS: 21 dBm/ 0,125 W LTE: 23 dBm/0.2 W
RSAD-boxes	Reception frequency: 6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz) Transmission frequency: 6.0–8.5 GHz (6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz)	–6.2 dBm e.i.r.p.
Analogue instrument cluster: Global / Basic / Medium	125 kHz	40 dBµA/m (for a distance of 10 m)
Digital instrument cluster: FPK Basic 8″	125 kHz	33.69 dBµA/m (for a distance of 3 m)
Tyre pressure monitoring system	433.92 MHz	10 mW

Information on trademarks

Specific terms in this guide are marked with the symbol ® or ™. These denote trademarks or registered brands. If this symbol is missing, it still does not warrant free use of these terms.

Other product names are registered brands or trademarks of the respective copyright holder.

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of VDA.
Alcantara® is a certified brand of ALCANTARA S.p.A.
Android Auto™ is a certified brand of Google Inc.
Apple CarPlay™, Siri® are certified brands of Apple Inc.
Bluetooth® is a certified brand of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.
HDMI, the HDMI logo are brands or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.
MirrorLink®, the MirrorLink® logo are certified brands of Car Connectivity Consortium LC.
Windows® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation, Redmond, USA.

Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

Rights arising from defective performance

Your ŠKODA Partner, as a seller, is liable to you for material defects in your new ŠKODA vehicle, ŠKODA Genuine Parts and ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in accordance with the legal requirements and the purchase contract.

The buyer is entitled to assert the rights arising from defective performance with the responsible ŠKODA partner from the time of vehicle handover. The date of the vehicle handover and the vehicle identification number (VIN) are properly documented in the "Vehicle delivery documentation" chapter in this Owner's Manual.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars

As well as the legal rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA AUTO grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as the "ŠKODA Warranty"), according to the conditions described below.

Under the ŠKODA Warranty, the company ŠKODA AUTO shall provide the following services[1)]:

- Free repair of damage due to a defect that occurs in your vehicle within 2 years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Free repair of damage due to paintwork flaws that occur on your vehicle within 3 years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Free repair of rust corrosion on the body, which occurs on your vehicle within 12 years of the start of the warranty.

  In terms of rust corrosion on the body, the ŠKODA Warranty shall cover only rust corrosion through body panels from the inside to the outside.

The start of the ŠKODA Warranty is the day on which the new car is handed over for use by a ŠKODA partner to the first buyer who is not a ŠKODA Partner[2)].

The ŠKODA Partner enters this date into the corresponding systems of the manufacturer. Any one ŠKODA Partner can notify you of this date on request.

Fault rectification under the ŠKODA Warranty can be carried out by means of a replacement or repair of the defective parts. The ŠKODA Service Partner decides about the type of vehicle repair. The fault rectification takes place in accordance with the availability of the ŠKODA Service Partners and within a reasonable period of time. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement car for the duration of repair and compensation.

The ŠKODA Guarantee can be asserted with any ŠKODA Service partners without undue delay, however before the end of Warranty period, at the latest.

There are no claims under the ŠKODA Warranty if vehicle damage has occurred in causal connection with one of the following circumstances:

- The service work was not carried out on time and professionally according to the provisions of ŠKODA AUTO or its execution was not proven by the

---

1) Based on the requirements of generally binding legal regulations or country-specific market requirements, the ŠKODA partner or importer can provide a warranty beyond the scope of the stated ŠKODA Warranty. This local warranty extends the scope of performance in accordance with the specific warranty conditions of ŠKODA partners or importers.

2) Due to the requirements of the generally binding country-specific regulations, the date of first registration can be given instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

customer when asserting claims under the ŠKODA Warranty.

- Damage has not been reported immediately to a specialist company or has not been properly remedied.
- Damage refers to parts that are subject to natural wear, such as tyres, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, clutch, bulbs, synchronizer rings, batteries, etc.
- External impact or influences (e.g. accident, hail, flood, fire etc.).
- Installation, connection of parts or accessories, other adaptation or technical modification of the vehicle not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. Tuning).
- Unauthorized use, improper handling (e.g. use in motor sport competitions or overloading or commercial passenger transport), improper care or unauthorized maintenance.
- Non-compliance with provisions in the Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions.

The customer shall prove the lack of causation.

The present ŠKODA Warranty shall not affect the purchaser's statutory rights arising from unsatisfactory performance in respect of the seller of the vehicle and possible claims arising from product liability laws.

ŠKODA Mobility warranty

The Mobility Warranty provides you with a sense of certainty for journeys in your vehicle.

If your vehicle is left on the road due to an unexpected fault, we can provide services to keep you moving as part of the mobility guarantee, including the following: technical assistance on the phone, breakdown assistance at the breakdown location, start-up on site, and towing to the ŠKODA service partner, if necessary.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, then the ŠKODA Service Partner may, if necessary, arrange additional subsequent services, such as replacement transport (bus, train, etc.), the provision of a replacement vehicle, and the like.

Specific claims for free provision of services under the ŠKODA Mobility Warranty only exist if your vehicle has remained in a causal connection with a defect which is to be remedied on the basis of fulfilment under the ŠKODA Warranty.

Check the conditions for provision of the Mobility Warranty for your vehicle with your ŠKODA Partner. They will also inform you of the detailed terms and conditions of the Mobility Warranty in relation to your vehicle. In the event that your vehicle is not covered by a mobility warranty, he will inform you of the possibilities for subsequent conclusion.

Optional ŠKODA Extended Warranty

If you also purchased a ŠKODA Extended Warranty when purchasing your new car, ŠKODA AUTO will provide you with a free repair of vehicle damage caused by a defect in the vehicle during the warranty period.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty for your vehicle is valid for the agreed period or until the agreed mileage limit is reached, whichever comes first.

For the assessment of claims from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty, the conditions of the ŠKODA warranty described above apply to the appropriate extent.

The fault rectification under the ŠKODA Extended Warranty can only be carried out by replacement or repair of the defective parts, whereby the ŠKODA service partner decides on the type of vehicle repair. The fault rectification takes place in accordance with the availability of the ŠKODA Service Partners and within a reasonable period of time.

There shall in any case be no entitlement to further claims from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement car for the duration of repair and compensation.

The previously mentioned paint warranty and the warranty against rust perforation are unaffected by the ŠKODA extended warranty.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty does not apply to exterior and interior foils.

Your ŠKODA partner will provide you with information about the detailed conditions of the ŠKODA Extended Warranty.

The ŠKODA Mobility Warranty and the ŠKODA Extended Warranty are only available in some countries.

Engine specifications

1.4 l/92 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	92/5000-6000	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	220/1500-4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395	
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Maximum speed (km/h)	187	187
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.6	10.7

1.4 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	110/5000-6000			
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1500-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395			
Vehicle version	Five-seat		Seven-seat	
Gearbox	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	199/195 [b]	191	199/195 [b]	191
With specified gear engaged	5	5	5	5
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.6/9.8 [b]	10.1	9.8/9.9 [b]	10.3

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

[b] Applies to vehicles destined for the Russian market.

1.5 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	110/5000-6000			
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1500-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1498			
Vehicle version	Five-seat		Seven-seat	
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	DSG [a]	Manual gearbox	DSG [a]
Maximum speed (km/h)	206	205	206	205
With specified gear engaged	5	6	5	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.8	9.7	9.9	9.8

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

2.0 l/132 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	132/3900-6000	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	320/1400-3940	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Gearbox	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	207/203 [b]	205/202 [b]
With specified gear engaged	7	7
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.2/8.4 [b]	8.4/8.5 [b]

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

[b] Applies to vehicles destined for the Russian market.

2.0 l/140 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	140/4200-6000	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	320/1500-4100	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Gearbox	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	216	215
With specified gear engaged	6	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.5	7.7

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

2.0 l/180 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	180/5250-6500	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	370/1600-4300	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Gearbox	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	234	233
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	6.5	6.6

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR engine

Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968					
Vehicle version	Five-seat			Seven-seat		
Gearbox	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4 (EU6)	DSG [a] 4x4 (EU4)	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4 (EU6)	DSG [a] 4x4 (EU4)
Output (kW at rpm)	110/ 3000-4200	110/ 3000-4200	110/ 3500-4000	110/ 3000-4200	110/ 3000-4200	110/ 3500-4000
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	360/ 1600-2750	360/ 1600-2750	340/ 1750-3000	360/ 1600-2750	360/ 1600-2750	340/ 1750-3000
Maximum speed (km/h)	204	200	193/192 [b]	204	200	193/192 [b]
With specified gear engaged	7	7	7	7	7	5
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.6	9.6	10.1/9.7 [b]	9.8	9.8	10.3/9.9 [b]

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

[b] Applies to vehicles destined for the Russian market.

2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	147/3600-4100	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	400/1750-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Gearbox	DSG [a)] 4x4	DSG [a)] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	218	216
With specified gear engaged	7	7
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.7	7.8

[a)] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

Index

Numbers and symbols

12 volt vehicle battery 219
Charge 219
Checking the condition 219
Discharge protection 219
Disconnecting and connecting 220
Fault: 220
Safety 22
see 12 volt vehicle battery 219
Warning lights 220

A

ABS 190
ACC 194
Automatic stop and start 194
Distance adjustment 195
Interruption of cruise control 195
Accident data recorder 257
Activation of online services 170
Adaptive Cruise Control 194
Adaptive suspension 184
AdBlue 214
Checking 214
Indicator light 215
Refilling 214
Safety 22
Standard 214
Tank capacity 215
Air conditioning
see Climatronic 66
see Manual air conditioning 65
Airbag 54
Deactivating the airbags 55
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 55
Fault: 55
Installation locations 54
Release 54
Safety 54
Alarm system 32
Trailer 32
All-season tyres 226
Ambient lighting 62
Analogue instrument cluster 72
Android Auto
Infotainment Amundsen 135
Infotainment Bolero 114
Infotainment Columbus 161
Infotainment Swing 92
see digital version of the manual 6
Anonymous vehicle data 171
Apple CarPlay
Infotainment Amundsen 135
Infotainment Bolero 114
Infotainment Columbus 161
Infotainment Swing 92
see digital version of the manual 6
Area View 205, 206
see Area View 205
Armrest
front 44
rear 45
Ashtray 244
ASR 190
Assist systems
Driver assist 190
Park Assist 203
Safety 24
Assist systems for emergency situations 201
Auto Hold 189
Automatic Braking
See Front Assist 191
Automatic gearbox 182
Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 183
Manually switching gear with the selector lever 182
Automatic gearbox modes 182
Auxiliary heating and ventilation 67
Change the battery in the remote control 69
Troubleshooting 69
Availability of the ŠKODA Connect services 169

B

Battery acid 219
Bonnet 210
Boot 234
12 volt socket 234
Boot storagesee boot lid 37
Double-sided floor covering 237
Fasteners 235
Fastening nets 236
fixing the floor covering 237
Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests 234
Net partition 236
Roll-up cover 237
Storage compartments 234

Trailer hitch switch 234
Transporting objects safely 24
Variable loading floor 238
Boot lid 37
Automatic locking 37
Boot lidContactless operation 38
manual operation 37
to be set to the highest position 38
Troubleshooting 38
unlock manually 39
Brake fluid 187
Safety 22
Brake pads 188
Brakes 187
Breakdown call 178

C

Car adaptations
Recommendations 251
Safety 21
Car seat
see Child seat 49
Cargo elements 235
Ceiling 245
Central locking 29
SAFE function 30
Central locking button 30
Centre console 15
Charging your phone wirelessly 243
Check the vehicle before your journey 23
Child lock 33
Child seat 49
Fastening using a belt 51
Grouping 50
i-Size 52
ISOFIX 51, 53
on the passenger seat 50
Recommended child seats 50
Securing children properly 24
TOP TETHER 53
Types of attachment 53
Cigarette lighter 244
Climatronic 66
Display in the centre console at the rear 66
Comfort flasher 58
COMING HOME 60
Coming home, Leaving home
see digital version of the manual 6
Commissioning the vehicle
Using the jump-starting cable 220
Compartments 239
Control Centre
Infotainment Amundsen 121
Infotainment Bolero 100
Infotainment Columbus 147
Infotainment Swing 83
see digital version of the manual 6
Coolant 212
Checking and refilling 212
Safety 22
Specification 212
Temperature display 212
Troubleshooting 213
Warning lights 212
Cooling system 65, 66
Crew Protect Assist
See Proactive Occupant Protection 200
Cruise control
Indicator light 193
Cruise control system 193
Cup holder 243
Cybernetic security
Infotainment Amundsen 130
Infotainment Bolero 108
Infotainment Columbus 156

D

Data connection 176
Daylight running lights 58
DCC 184
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 55
Display 55
Diesel 216
Misfuelling protection 217
prescribed fuel 217
Refilling 217
Requirements for refuelling 217
Standards 217
Tank capacity 217
Troubleshooting 217
Digital Assistant Laura
Columbus Infotainment 146
Infotainment Amundsen 120
Digital instrument cluster 73, 74
Distribution of the cargo 185
Door
Open/close 33
Door protect
see door protection strip 33
Door protection strip 33
Change 33
Driver Alert 201
see fatigue detection assistant 201
Driver Assist
See Travel Assist 198
Driver's seat 15
Driving data 76
Reset to default 77
Driving in neutral 182
DSR 190
Dynamic cornering lights 60
Activate/deactivate 60
Dynamic Light Assist
see headlight assistant 61

E

Earth point 220
Economical driving style 185
see digital version of the manual 6
EDL 190
Electric parking brake 188
Electric windows 34
Activation 35
Force limiter 34
Operation 34
Troubleshooting 35
Emergency
Emergency call 26
Using the jump-starting cable 220
What to do after an accident 27
What to do in the event of a fire 27
Emergency Assist
see assist systems for emergency situations 201
Emergency call 26
Emergency equipment 234
Car jack 234
Tool kit 234
Emergency wheel 227
safe driving 24
Engine compartment 16
Coolant 212
Engine oil 211
Flap 210
Safety 22
Engine number 255
Engine oil 211
Changing 211
Indicator light 211
Refilling 211
Safety 22
Specification 210
Engine specifications
see digital version of the manual 6
EPC 213
Equipment in the boot 234
ESC 190
ESC Sport 190, 191
Exhaust gas control system 214
Explanations 9
Exterior
lighting 57
Exterior mirrors 46
Extinguisher 234

F

Fasteners in the boot 235
Fault in the engine control system 213
First aid kit 234
Flooring in the boot 237
fixing the floor covering 237
Fog lights 59
Fogged windows 66, 67
Folding table 244
Freewheel
Free-wheelingSee Driving in neutral 182
Front Assist 191
Front seats
Electrically operated child lock 40
Manually operated boot lid 40
Front vehicle area 12
Fuel
Diesel 216
Petrol 215
Fuel filter 214
Fuel tank
Open bonnet 214
Fuel tank lid 214

H

Hazard warning light system 59
Headlight Assist System 61
Headlights
Dynamic cornering lights 60
Headlight range control 57
Headrests 44
Heated steering wheel 71
Heated windscreen 69
HHC
see Hill Hold Control 190
High-beam assist system 61
Hill Hold Control 190, 202
Activation/deactivation 202
Functionality 202
Operating conditions 202
Hook
in interior 239
in the luggage compartment 235

I

i-Size 52
Ice scraper 14
Images
Infotainment Amundsen 128
Infotainment Bolero 107
Infotainment Columbus 154
see digital version of the manual 6
Immobilizer 180
Indicator lights
Overview 17
Information call 178
Infotainment Amundsen 117
Infotainment Bolero 95
Infotainment Columbus 143
Infotainment keyboard
see digital version of the manual 6
infotainment online 179
Infotainment Overview
Infotainment Amundsen 117
Infotainment Bolero 95

Infotainment Columbus 143
Infotainment Swing 81
Infotainment screen
Infotainment Amundsen 118
Infotainment Bolero 97
Infotainment Columbus 144
Infotainment Swing 82
see digital version of the manual 6
Infotainment settings
Infotainment Amundsen 117
Infotainment Bolero 96
Infotainment Columbus 143
Infotainment Swing 81
Infotainment Swing 81
Infotainment system
see digital version of the manual 6
Instrument cluster
analogue 72
digital 73
Instrument cluster display 72
Instrument cluster display 72
Interior
lighting 62
Interior fittings
12 volt socket 234, 239, 246
230 volt socket 239, 246
Ashtray 244
Car park ticket holder 239
Cigarette lighter 244
Coat hook 239
Cup holder 243
Folding table 244
Glasses compartment 239
Make up mirror 239
Map pockets 239
Multifunction holder 245
Storage compartment for the umbrella 243
Storage compartment under the front seat 242
Storage compartments 239
Tablet holder 245
Ticket holder 239
Interior lighting 62
Ambient lighting 62
Operation 62
see digital version of the manual 6
Interior rear-view mirror 46
ISOFIX 53
Holding eyes 53
Placement on the seat 51

J

Jump start cables 220

K

Key 28
Key switch for airbag deactivation 55
Display 55
Key switch for the front passenger airbag
Key switch faulty 56
Keyboard
Infotainment Amundsen 119
Infotainment Bolero 97
Infotainment Columbus 145
Infotainment Swing 82
Keyless locking (KESSY) 31
Kick-down 182

L

Lane Assist 197
See Lane Assist 197
Lane change assist
See Side Assist 199
Lap timer
Instrument cluster 78
Lateral area of the vehicle 12
Launch control 182
LEAVING HOME 60
Lever
Buttons 72
Headlight Assist System 61
High-beam assist system 61
Main beam 58
Turn signal 58
Windscreen wipers and washers 63
Liability for defects
see warranty 261
Light 57
Automatically switch on and switch off 58
Bad weather light 59
Clean headlights 63
CORNER function 60
Driving in the opposite direction of traffic 57
Dynamic cornering lights 60
Fog light 59
Hazard warning light system 59
Headlamp flasher 58
Headlight Assist System 61
Headlight range adjustment of headlights 57
Indicator light 59
Main beam 58
Operation 57
Parking light 60
Troubleshooting 57
Turn signal 58
Light Assist
see high beam assistant 61
Light switch 57
Lighting
Ambient lighting 62
interior 62
outer 57
Lighting range 57
Limiter
see speed limiter 192
Lock 29, 31

Locking elements 221
Change 221
in dash panel 222
in engine compartment 223
Low beam 58

M

Main beam 58
Headlight Assist System 61
Management of online services 175
Manual air conditioning 65
Manual gearbox 181
MATRIX headlights
see headlight assistant 61
MCB 190
Media
Infotainment Amundsen 125
Infotainment Bolero 103
Infotainment Columbus 151
Infotainment Swing 86
Playlists 104, 126, 152
see digital version of the manual 6
Memory function of the seat 41
see digital version of the manual 6
Mirror
see exterior mirror 46
MirrorLink
Infotainment Amundsen 135
Infotainment Bolero 114
Infotainment Columbus 161
Infotainment Swing 92
see digital version of the manual 6
Mobile device management
Infotainment Amundsen 130
Infotainment Bolero 108
Infotainment Columbus 156
Infotainment Swing 89
MSR 190
Multi-collision brake
see MCB 190
Multifunction holder 245

N

Navigation
Infotainment Amundsen 138
Infotainment Bolero 96
Infotainment Columbus 164
see digital version of the manual 6
Net partition 236
Nets 236
New vehicle or new parts 21
Notes on starting 180

O

Offroad 184
Offroad information 184
Power on / off 184
Oil
see engine oil 211
Online Services
Availability 169
Breakdown call 178
Data connection 176
Information call 178
Management of online services 175
MyŠKODA Application 170
Personalisation 175
Service schedules 178
Shop 177
ŠKODA Connect 169
Škoda Connect services 179
System update 176
User Account 174
User management 173
User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services 170
Vehicle status report 179

P

Park Assist systems 203
Park steering assistant 207
Troubleshooting 208
Parking
Parking aid 203
Rear Traffic Alert 206
Rear view camera 204
Stop the vehicle safely! 25
Parking aid 203
Parking brake 188
see electric parking brake 188
Parking light 60
ParkPilot
see parking aid 203
Partition in the boot 238
Passenger seat 15
Pedestrian Detection 192
Personal data 171, 258
Personalisation 79, 175
Change user account 79
Key assignment 79
see digital version of the manual 6
Setting 79
Petrol 215
other fuel 216
prescribed petrol 215
Refilling 216
Requirements for refuelling 216
Standards 215
Tank capacity 216
Phonebox 243
Power sockets
12 volt socket 246
230 volt socket 246
Safety 23
Power-assisted steering 45

Predictive cruise control 194

R

Radiator blinds 214
Radio
Infotainment Amundsen 122
Infotainment Bolero 100
Infotainment Columbus 148
Infotainment Swing 84
see digital version of the manual 6
Radio systems in the vehicle 258
Raise vehicle 228
Rear armrest
see digital version of the manual 6
Rear fog light 59
rear 59
Rear Traffic Alert 206
Rear vehicle area 14
Rear view camera 204
Operation 204
Recirculated air mode 65, 66
Refilling
AdBlue 214
Coolant 212
Diesel 217
Engine oil 211
Petrol 216
Windscreen washer fluid 63
Reflective vest 234
Release 29, 31
Remote access to the vehicle 179
Remote control of auxiliary heating and ventilationChange the battery
KeyChanging the battery 69
Restarting the Infotainment system
Infotainment Amundsen 118
Infotainment Bolero 96
Infotainment Columbus 144
Infotainment Swing 82
Rights arising from defective performance
see warranty 261
Roll-up boot cover 237
Roof rack 248
Roof load 248
safe driving 24

S

Safe driving 24
SAFE function 30
Safety
Before your journey 21
Car adaptations 21
Child seat 24
Driving through water 24
Emergency call 26
Exiting the vehicle 25
New vehicle or new parts 21
Sensors and cameras 22
sit properly 23
Transport cargo and objects 24
Warning lights 24
Weather conditions 26
Webbing route 23
What to do after an accident 27
What to do in the event of a fire 27
Seat belts 48
Adjusting the height 49
Automatic belt retractor 48
Belt tensioners 48
correct arrangement 23
Fastening and unfastening 48
Reversible belt tensioner 48
Safety 48
Seat beltsBlocked strap 49
Status display 48
Seat heating 70
Seat massage function 41
see digital version of the manual 6
Seat ventilation 70
Seats 40
Access to the third row 42
Heating 70
ISOFIX 53
Memory function of the seat 41
second row 42
sit safely 23
third row of seats 43
TOP TETHER 53
Ventilation 70
Selector lever 182
Service events 251
Interval 251
Resetting information 251
Show service appointment 251
Service position for windscreen wiper arms 64
Service schedules 178
see digital version of the manual 6
Service work 251
Set tyre pressure values 231
Setting personal data protection 171
Shop 177
Side Assist 199
Side light 58
see Parking light 60
Škoda Connect services
see digital version of the manual 6
Sliding hooks 236
Sliding/tilting roof 35
electric operation of the sun blinds 36
Operation 35
SmartLink
Infotainment Amundsen 135
Infotainment Bolero 114
Infotainment Columbus 161
Infotainment Swing 92

see digital version of the manual 6
Snow chains 226
Spare wheel 227
safe driving 24
Speed limit 78
Speed limit warning 78
Reset to default 78
Setting 78
Speed limiter 192
Indicator light 192
Start 180
START-STOP 181
Starter button 180
Steering column lock 45
Steering wheel 45
Buttons / dial 73, 74
Buttons/dial: 45
correct position 24
Heating 71
Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 183
Stopping the engine 180
Stopwatch
Instrument cluster 78
Storage 239
Sun protection 37
electric operation of the sun blinds 36
Sun protectionOperation of the sun blinds for the rear door windows 36
Sunshades
activation of the sunroof's sunshade control 36
Supported media files
see digital version of the manual 6
Supported media sources
see digital version of the manual 6
Switching low beam on automatically 58
Switching process
Manual gearbox 181
System
Infotainment Amundsen 117
Infotainment Bolero 95
Infotainment Columbus 143
Infotainment Swing 81
System update 176

T

Tablet holder 245
see digital version of the manual 6
Tank capacity
Diesel 217
Petrol 216
Technical data 255
Dimensions 257
Telephone
Infotainment Amundsen 131
Infotainment Bolero 109
Infotainment Columbus 157
Infotainment Swing 91
see digital version of the manual 6
Tilting/sliding sunroof
activation after disconnecting the 12-volt vehicle battery 36
Troubleshooting 36
Tips for economical driving 185
Tiptronic 182, 183
Tool 234
TOP TETHER 53
Holding eyes 53
Touch operation
Infotainment Amundsen 118
Infotainment Bolero 97
Infotainment Columbus 144
Infotainment Swing 82
Tow hitch 248
Tow bar: swivel out/in 248
Troubleshooting 249
Vertical load 249
Tow rope 186
Towing a trailer 185
Safety 24
Trailer Stability Assist 190
Towing lug 186
Towing the vehicle 186
Traffic accident
Data recorder 257
Emergency call 26
What to do after an accident 27
Traffic Sign Recognition 199
Trailer 185
Alarm system 32
Coupling and uncoupling 248
Permissible load 185
safe driving 24
Trailer Assist 208, 209
see Trailer Assist 208
Trailer Stability Assist 190
Transport
Roof rack 248
Tow hitch 248
Transporting objects safely 24
Transporting children 24
Travel Assist 198
TSA
see Trailer Stability Assist 190
Turn signal 58
Type plate 255
Tyre pressure monitor 230
Tyre pressure monitoring system 231
Tyres 225, 226
Breakdown set 229
Labelling overview 225
Pressure 230
Tyre pressure monitor 230
Wear indicator 225

U

Umbrella 243
Update of the system and infotainment
see digital version of the manual 6
Updating infotainment
Infotainment Amundsen 118
Infotainment Bolero 96
Infotainment Columbus 144
Infotainment Swing 82
USB 239
User Account 174
User management 173
User registration 170

V

Variable loading floor in the boot 238
Vehicle cleaning
Exterior 253
Instructions for cleaning the interior 252
Instructions for cleaning the outer area 254
Interior 252
Vehicle dimensions 257
Vehicle driving mode 184
Eco 184
Individual 184
Normal 184
Offroad 184
Snow 184
Sport 184
Vehicle height 257
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 255
Vehicle length 257
Vehicle status 78
Vehicle status report 179
see digital version of the manual 6
Vehicle width 257
Vest
see reflective vest 234
VIN
see vehicle identification number 255
Virtual cockpit
see digital instrument cluster 73
Voice control
Infotainment Amundsen 120
see digital version of the manual 6
Voice Control
Infotainment Bolero 98
Infotainment Columbus 146

W

Warning lights
Foreword 17
Warning triangle 234
Warranty 261
Mobility warranty 261
Optional Extended Warranty 261
Rights arising from defective performance 261
Warranty for new cars 261
Wash in a car wash 253
Wash with a pressure washer 253
Waste container 244
Water in the fuel filter 214
Weight 255
Wheels 225
Aero full wheel covers 232
Breakdown 226
Change 227, 228
Full wheel cover 232
Overview of tyre labelling 225
Pressure change 226
Snow chains 226
Spare wheel and emergency spare wheel 227
Tyre pressure 230
Tyre pressure monitor 230
Wear indicator 225
WheelsCover caps for the screws 232
Wi-Fi
Infotainment Amundsen 134
Infotainment Bolero 112
Infotainment Columbus 160
see digital version of the manual 6
Window 34
Heating 69
Windscreen washer fluid
Windscreen washer fluidHow is the washer fluid refilled? 63
Windscreen washer fluidLevel too low 64
Windscreen washer system
see windscreen wiper and washer 63
Windscreen wipers and washers 63
automatic rear window wiping 63
automatic wiping 63
Refilling windscreen washer fluid 63
Replace the windscreen wiper blade 64
Unfold the windscreen wiper arms 64
Windscreen washer fluid level too low 64
Winter tyres 226

X

XDL + 190